Solution of Rational Expectations Models with Function Valued States

David Childers[*]

January 15, 2018

Abstract

Many variables of interest to economists take the form of time varying distributions or functions. This high dimensional 'functional' data can be interpreted in the context of economic models with function valued endogenous variables, but deriving the implications of these models requires solving a nonlinear system for an infinite dimensional function of infinite dimensional objects. To overcome this difficulty, I provide methods for characterizing and numerically approximating the equilibria of DSGE models with function valued variables by linearization in function space and representation using basis functions. These methods permit arbitrary infinite dimensional variation in the state variables, do not impose exclusion restrictions on the relationship between variables or limit their impact to a finite dimensional sufficient statistic, and come with demonstrable guarantees of consistency and polynomial time computational complexity. I demonstrate the applicability of the theory by providing an analytical characterization and computing the solution to a dynamic model of trade, migration, and economic geography.

---

1 Introduction

In order to understand and evaluate the causes and consequences of economic heterogeneity, it is helpful to have an analytical framework in which the distribution of heterogeneity can change over time and can both affect and be affected by other variables. A perspective in which some of the endogenous variables of an economic model are endogenous random functions allows distributions, as well as objects like demand and supply curves or policy or value functions, to be treated as data. While descriptive models and methods for function valued time series are undergoing rapid development,[1] interpreting this data requires formulating economic models capable of generating the observed functional data and deriving their implications. For models featuring forward looking decision making and endogenous aggregate variables, this derivation typically requires solving a computationally intractable infinite dimensional system of nonlinear expectational difference equations. Although heuristic or strongly model dependent methods have been proposed, to date there appears to be no general purpose algorithm which provides a formal guarantee of even an approximate solution to rational expectations models with stochastic function valued states.[2]

This paper provides such an algorithm. In particular, it demonstrates how the equilibrium conditions for a general class of function valued rational expectations models, including but not limited to heterogeneous agent dynamic stochastic general equilibrium models, can be linearized directly in function space, with solutions characterized locally by a functional linear process, a tractable empirical model for function valued time series (Bosq, 2000). Construction of a local solution requires introducing a novel infinite dimensional extension of the generalized Schur decomposition used to solve finite dimensional rational expectations models (Klein, 2000) and developing perturbation theory for this object, which may be contributions of independent mathematical interest. The solution can be implemented numerically by a procedure based on finite dimensional projection approximations which converges

---

[1] See Horváth & Kokoszka (2012); Bosq (2000); Morris (2014); Ferraty & Romain (2011) for surveys of the rapidly expanding field of functional data analysis, which focuses on modeling, estimation, and inference for series of observed or estimated functions.

[2] Models and algorithms with a distribution of agents were deveoped Bewley (1986), Huggett (1993) and Aiyagari (1994) in the time invariant case and Krusell & Smith (1998) with aggregate uncertainty. For surveys of models and methods see Krusell & Smith (2006); Heathcote *et al.* (2009); Guvenen (2011); Ljungqvist & Sargent (2004) and the *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control* symposium on the topic (Den Haan, 2010). A noteworthy exception with computational guarantees in a related class of models is the recent work of Pröhl (2017).

to the local solution under mild regularity conditions. I analyze in detail a particular approximation algorithm in this class, a wavelet transform based procedure which yields an approximate solution accurate to within any desired degree in polynomial time.

To demonstrate and evaluate the method, I develop a dynamic spatial model of trade, migration, and economic geography which introduces forward looking migration decisions and spatial shocks into the economic geography model of Krugman (1996). In the model, the spatial distribution of population, wages, and welfare over a continuum of locations is allowed to vary nonparametrically in response to persistent spatially correlated shocks to the desirability of different locations. Due to the spatial structure of trade and production, the spatial distribution of economic activity is a determined by the distribution of population across locations, while the distribution of population is determined by forward looking migration decisions which take into account the expected distribution of economic activity. In this setting, the relationship between these two functions is not easily reduced to low-dimensional summaries or split into "local" and "global" components, but is well characterized by a functional linear model representation. By exploiting an analytical characterization of the solution to certain parameterizations of this model, the speed and numerical accuracy of the algorithm are evaluated in practice and shown to be in line with the strong theoretical guarantees.

The core idea behind the solution method is *functional linearization.* By taking the functional derivatives of the equations defining an equilibrium, it is possible to construct a system of equations which can be solved for the functional derivatives at a fixed point in function space of the policy operator, a map from function valued states to function valued endogenous variables. In this way, it is possible to recover local information about the solutions, which can then be used to construct a functional Taylor expansion of the policy operator which provides an accurate solution for all functions not too far from the function around which the model is linearized.

Related perturbation methods for heterogeneous agent models have previously been developed: see Chung (2007), Reiter (2009), Winberry (2014, 2016), Veracierto (2014), Boppart *et al.* (2017), and Ahn *et al.* (2017) for methods and discussion of the advantages of this class of procedures. While these approaches are similar in spirit and practice, none works directly in the space of functions as the approach advocated here does; this complementary perspective allows for development of theoretical accuracy

guarantees and precise delineation of regularity conditions that may have broader applicability to this entire class of methods.

Constructing this linear approximation of the policy operators from the functional derivatives of the model equations requires solving a system of quadratic equations in linear operators. In the case of linear or linearized finite dimensional rational expectations models, the analogous quadratic equation can be solved using matrix decomposition. In particular, Klein (2000) demonstrated that a solution can be found using the generalized Schur (QZ) decomposition of the matrices of derivatives. In infinite dimensions, an analogous decomposition appears to be absent from the literature, in part because the finite dimensional version is constructed by induction using eigenvalues, which may fail to exist or have countable cardinality in infinite dimensional space. Nevertheless, it is possible to construct an analogous decomposition by other methods, described in detail in Appendix A. Under the conditions required for such a decomposition to exist and under further conditions analogous to the well known criterion of Blanchard & Kahn (1980) ensuring that the model has a unique linear solution, it is possible to solve for the first order expansion of the policy operator.

Calculating this local solution numerically requires representing it in a form that can be evaluated on a computer. A standard procedure for reducing problems in function spaces to finite dimensional objects is to approximate the functions by projecting the space onto the span of a set of basis functions, such as wavelets, splines, or trigonometric or Chebyshev polynomials and represent operators on function space in terms of their behavior with respect to the basis functions. These approaches are referred to as spectral methods and are commonly applied to solve integral and differential equations: see Boyd (2000), Chatelin (2011). If any function one is interested in can be represented reasonably accurately by a finite set of basis functions, the loss from the use of a finite set of functions may be small. The caveat here is that, unlike in classical function approximation problems where the class of functions is known, 'the set of functions one is interested in' is not explicitly assumed, but must be determined by the properties of the model.

The issue that projection methods must overcome is that the class of functions well approximated by finite projection is in fact small in the class of all possible functions which could conceivably arise endogenously as outcomes of an implicitly defined model with function valued variables. To handle this concern, conditions must be imposed on the model which ensure both that the solutions themselves are continuous with

respect to projection approximations and that the solutions are operators which have the property that they map functions which are well approximated by basis functions to functions which are well approximated by basis functions. Continuity properties of the generalized Schur decomposition are derived in Appendix B, and a set of restrictions on the model which ensure that basis function approximation is valid is described in Section 5.1.

While the precise statements of the sufficient conditions on a model for projection to be valid do impose nontrivial mathematical regularity on the class of applicable models, the conditions themselves are economically mild. Essentially, they rule out certain kinds of maps which take well behaved smooth functions as input and produce jagged, noisy, or discontinuous functions as output. Many economic models can be represented in forms which satisfy these conditions, and many of those that do not can be modified slightly so that they do, for example by smoothing discontinuous cost functions or adding a small amount of noise to ensure that a distribution remains smooth.

Provided that the regularity conditions hold, implementing the solution is simple and fast. The linearized equilibrium equations can be approximated by projection, either analytically or numerically by quadrature, to produce two pairs of matrices, to which one can apply the finite dimensional QZ decomposition, solve, and combine to form a matrix approximation to the infinite dimensional policy operator. The accuracy of the approximation is then determined by the number of basis functions used and the smoothness of the functions that they are used to approximate. If all the equilibrium conditions are defined using Hölder continuous functions, wavelets provide the smallest and fastest feasible representation. Implementing approximate projection using the Discrete Wavelet Transform, the method converges in a number of operations polynomial in the degree of accuracy of the solution and in numerical experiments gives demonstrably accurate results at high speed. High level conditions are also provided for more general procedures, including for the case when parts of the model are estimated directly from data.

Outline

The structure of this paper is as follows. I describe the setting of rational expectations models with function valued states in Section 2. Section 3 describes an illustrative

application, a dynamic model of trade, migration and economic geography. Section 4 characterizes and gives necessary conditions for the existence of solution to the linearized model, while Section 5 introduces projection algorithms for calculating this solution and describes conditions for their consistency. Section 6 illustrates the procedure by applying it to solve the geography model from Section 3 and evaluates its performance by comparing to an analytical characterization of the solution. Section 7 concludes. Several appendices contain additional results: Appendix A describes conditions for existence of an infinite dimensional version of the generalized Schur decomposition and Appendix B gives conditions under which it is continuous. Appendix C covers supplementary results about functional linearization and Appendix D contains additional details and results of the geography model. Appendix E provides high level sufficient conditions for the existence of recursive equilibria in function valued dynamic models. Appendix F collects all proofs, and Appendix G contains additional figures.

2   Function Valued Models and Linearization in Function Space

The class of dynamic economic models which may be placed in a framework amenable to linearization in function space is large. Many economic models define objects of interest, explicitly or implicitly, as functions which solve a set of equations representing conditions such as optimization, market clearing, self-consistency, feasibility, or accounting identities. For example, a consumption function is often represented implicitly as the solution to an Euler equation, or a value function as the fixed point of a Bellman operator. Most trivially, when economic variables take values in Euclidean space, all of the theory developed in this paper will continue to apply.

To formalize the linearization procedure and to provide a framework which permits both variables which are predetermined and those determined by forward looking expectations, I provide a notational framework for a general class of models. The notation and structure to be used follows closely that of Schmitt-Grohe & Uribe (2004), who described perturbation procedures for finite dimensional rational expectations models, with the difference that I now allow state variables to be elements of an infinite dimensional space. I consider in particular models with a recursive representation

6

described by a set of equilibrium conditions which may be expressed as differentiable operators between separable Banach spaces. A solution to the model defines a recursive law of motion for the endogenous variables in the system in terms of the exogenous variables and past values of endogenous variables. The law is determined implicitly as the solution of a nonlinear expectational difference equation

$$\mathbb{E}F(x, y, x', y', \sigma) = 0_{\mathcal{B}_2} \tag{2.1}$$

where x is a set of predetermined variables in Banach space $\mathcal{B}_x$ with norm $\|.\|_{\mathcal{B}_x}$, written as $\|.\|$ when the space is clear from context, $y \in \mathcal{B}_y$ is a set of endogenous or 'jump' variables, a superscript x', y' indicates the values of these elements in the next time period $t+1$ and the absence thereof indicates values of variables known at time t, $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ is a scalar scaling parameter determining the size of fluctuations. The function $F(x, y, x', y', \sigma) : \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y \times \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{B}_2$, which I refer to as the *equilibrium operator*, is a map taking the values of the state variables today and tomorrow and the scaling parameter to a Banach space $\mathcal{B}_2$, and $\mathbb{E}$ is the (Bochner) expectation with respect to the law of motion induced by the solution of the model, to be made explicit shortly.[3]

Uncertainty in the model is incorporated solely via exogenous Banach random elements z' on probability space $(\mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_z, \mu^z)$, which enter into the exogenous law of motion generating a subset of the predetermined variables x_2, with $(x_1, x_2) \in \mathcal{B}_{x_1} \times \mathcal{B}_{x_2} = \mathcal{B}_x$, by the equation $x_2' = h_2(x_2) + \sigma z'$ for $h_2 : \mathcal{B}_{x_2} \to \mathcal{B}_{x_2}$ a given function describing the dependence of future values of x_2 on current values. The shocks z' are normalized to have zero mean $\mathbb{E}[z'] = 0$. As a result, F contains as one subcomponent the formula $x_2' - h_2(x_2)$.

While this form may appear somewhat restrictive, many apparent limitations may be addressed through inclusion of appropriate auxiliary variables and equations. For example, while only variables in two time periods are included, by including lags and leads as separate variables, systems dependent on more time periods may be brought into this recursive form. Likewise, while function valued uncertainty z' is restricted to enter additively in the model, nonlinear effects of shocks may be

---

[3]The Bochner integral of a $\mathcal{B}$-valued random variable g on probability space (Ω, Σ, μ) is given by an element $\mathbb{E}g \in \mathcal{B}$ defined for simple functions $g = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i\{\omega \in A_i\}$ for f_i in $\mathcal{B}$, $A_i \in \Sigma$ as $\mathbb{E}g = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i\mu[A_i]$ and for more general random variables g as the strong limit of the Bochner integral of a sequence of simple functions g_n such that $\mu\|g - g_n\|_{\mathcal{B}} \to 0$. A measurable random element is Bochner integrable if and only if $\mu\|g\|_{\mathcal{B}} < \infty$.

included by adding an additional predetermined variable which is a function of the shock: e.g., if z_k enters nonlinearly in F, replacing z_k with x_{2k} and incorporating the equation $x'_{2k} = \mathbb{E}z'_k + \sigma(z'_k - \mathbb{E}z'_k)$ can recover the nonlinear effects. Beyond imposing a recursive structure, the form provides a consistent notation but imposes only modest restrictions on the form of the economic model.

A (recursive) solution is given by a set of policy operators which solve the equilibrium equation for any value of the initial predetermined state x and the exogenous shocks z. In each period, y is given by the endogenously determined map $g(x, \sigma)$ from predetermined state x to endogenous state y (or x' to y'), and x' is given by the transition operator $h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z'$ mapping the current predetermined state and shocks to next period's predetermined state, where η denotes the imbedding $\mathcal{B}_{x_2} \to \mathcal{B}_x$, i.e. for $z \in \mathcal{B}_{x_2}$, $\eta[z] = (0, z) \in \mathcal{B}_{x_1} \times \mathcal{B}_{x_2}$, and $h(x, \sigma) = (h_1(x, \sigma), h_2(x_2))$ includes both an endogenously determined transition component h_1 and an exogenous component h_2.

Definition 1. A *recursive solution* is a set of maps $g(x, \sigma) : \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{B}_y$, $h_1(x, \sigma) : \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{B}_{x_1}$, $h_2(x_2) : \mathcal{B}_{x_2} \to \mathcal{B}_{x_2}$ such that the *equilibrium conditions* hold:

$$\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x, \sigma), h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', g(h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', \sigma), \sigma) = 0_{\mathcal{B}_2} \qquad (2.2)$$

for all x, σ, where the expectation $\mathbb{E}$ may now be defined, for each x, σ as the expectation with respect to the pushforward measure of μ^z on $\mathcal{B}_2$ generated by the function $F(x, g(x, \sigma), h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', g(h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', \sigma), \sigma) : (x, z', \sigma) \in \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_{x_2} \times \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{B}_2$ evaluated at fixed x, σ.

In order to ensure computation of a stationary solution, the point around which the model is linearized is a nonstochastic steady state, which allows construction of a solution which is both local and recursive, by ensuring that the point around which the rule is calculated is the same in all periods.

Definition 2. A *nonstochastic steady state* is a set of values $(x^*, y^*) \in \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y$ such that when $\sigma = 0$ and so function valued uncertainty disappears, F satisfies

$$F(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0) = 0$$

Many recursive models will have such a point, at which all aggregate variables are unchanging over time. This is the equilibrium concept used in Bewley-Huggett-Aiyagari models, in which the distribution of heterogeneity is given by an invariant

distribution generated by individual decision rules, and its existence can often be guaranteed by fixed point theorem. It may also be calculated consistently by standard methods, such as the iterative algorithms proposed by Huggett (1993) and Aiyagari (1994). In general, determining the nonstochastic steady state of a model involves solving a functional equation, which will differ depending on the details of the model. However, the problem involves determining only a single set of functions rather than an operator valid for any function, and is often quite feasible using standard methods. For example, in models where the decision rule is a function valued state variable, recursive solutions are often available by dynamic programming, for which there are many feasible approximation algorithms with geometric convergence. Calculation of invariant distributions of Markov processes is also often achievable by iterative methods with geometric convergence. More broadly, in the absence of infinite dimensional uncertainty, the problem usually reduces to a set of integral equations, for which a broad variety of standard numerical integral equation methods may be used.

A linearized solution of the model is given by first order Taylor expansion of $g(.)$ and $h(.)$ with respect to their arguments at the steady state. In order to solve for this, $g(.)$ and $h(.)$ and the operator $F : \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y \times \mathcal{B}_y \to \mathcal{B}_2$ must be differentiable with respect to their arguments. In Banach space, the appropriate notion of derivative for linearization is (usually) the Fréchet derivative, which is defined analogously to the Fréchet derivative in Euclidean space.[4] If $F(x)$ is an operator between Banach spaces $\mathcal{B}_1 \to \mathcal{B}_2$, the Fréchet derivative, if it exists, is the continuous linear operator DF satisfying

$$\lim_{\|h\|_1 \to 0} \frac{\|F(x+h) - F(x) - DF[h]\|_2}{\|h\|_1} = 0. \tag{2.3}$$

In practice, calculation of Fréchet derivatives of Banach space-valued operators is not difficult: they obey many of the standard rules of Euclidean-valued derivatives including linearity, additivity, and the product rule, and many standard operators have known derivatives: see e.g. Kesavan (2004). Most importantly, the Fréchet derivative follows a version of the chain rule: for two Fréchet differentiable operators F, G, $D(F \circ G)[h] = DF[DG[h]]$. Fréchet differentiability is strictly stronger than directional, or Gateaux differentiability, which requires only the existence of a limit in the direction of a fixed element h. As the Gateaux derivatives of F in any direction

---

[4]See Appendix C for modeling choices which may ensure Fréchet differentiability or weaker conditions that can be used when it fails.

$h \in \mathcal{B}$ may be calculated as the scalar derivative $\frac{d}{d\tau}F(x + \tau h)$ at $\tau = 0$ and must coincide with the Fréchet derivative when the latter exists, the form of the Fréchet derivative is easily determined. The Fréchet derivative preserves linear operators, so integration, differentiation, multiplication by a function, and any composition thereof have derivatives equal to themselves. A special class of operators which arises frequently in economic models is the composition of one function with another, referred to as a Nemytskii operator. Under appropriate boundedness, differentiability, and integrability conditions on $f(s_1, s_2)$, the composition $f(g(x), s_2)$, viewed as a map from the function $g(.)$ of x to the function $f(g(x), s_2)$ of x, s_2 is a Fréchet differentiable function of $g(.)$ at the point $g^*(.)$ with derivative $f_{s_1}(g^*(x), s_2) \cdot [h(.)]$: that is, the derivative is given by multiplication of the direction in which g changes by the partial derivative of f with respect to the element with which it is composed (Kesavan, 2004). In Banach space, Taylor's theorem for Fréchet derivatives gives a linear approximation of a differentiable operator $F(x): \mathcal{B}_1 \to \mathcal{B}_2$ as $F(x + h) = F(x) + DF[h] + o(\|h\|_1)$.

It is important to contrast a Taylor expansion in function space with a local solution for finite dimensional models: see Reiter (2009); Winberry (2016) for related discussion. The point at which the linearization is constructed is the stationary state of the model in the situation where the variance of function valued shocks is taken to 0. This is not the same as shutting down all variability in the model. In most heterogeneous agent models, individuals face a distribution of idiosyncratic uncertainty which may be arbitrarily dispersed and induces a nondegenerate stationary distribution of heterogeneity, in which the state of each individual evolves stochastically over time. In these models, the steady state function is the stationary distribution of heterogeneity, in the absence of aggregate shocks. For example, the unemployment rate can be constant over time while each individual faces employment risk, with the number of people entering and leaving unemployment equal. Similarly, linearization of the policy operator does not imply all decision rules are linear: decisions with respect to individual characteristics may be arbitrarily nonlinear. Instead, the relationship between function valued state variables is expressed in terms of linear operators.

3 Example: Trade, Migration, and Economic Geography

To provide an illustrative example of the procedure and the class of models which can be analyzed using these methods, I present a dynamic model of economic geography based on the spatial model of Krugman (1996). In particular, it borrows the static spatial equilibrium of that model, which determines wages, output, production, and prices at a continuum of locations given a distribution of population, and replaces the dynamic structure, which was given by an ad hoc behavioral rule chosen purely for tractability, with an intertemporally optimizing dynamic stochastic model of location choice extending those of Artuç *et al.* (2010) and Caliendo *et al.* (2015) to the continuum, allowing analysis of the dynamics of regional economies at arbitrary resolution in response to aggregate shocks which may be global or asymmetric across regions. To capture the temporal structure of the dynamics, the model imposes adjustment costs on the movement of population, so that adjustment to regional shocks must take place in the short run by movements of prices and quantities and only gradually by shifts in population. This feature, along with explicit modeling of preferences, allows the evaluation of the welfare implications of regional shocks. Another important motivation for the choice of this model is that in the special case, also considered by Krugman (1996), of a completely spatially homogeneous geography with a continuum of locations where no location differs ex ante from any other, the linearized solution to the model can be described analytically. This makes the model a useful test case for numerical algorithms that attempt to approximate this solution numerically.

I begin with the intertemporal decision problem, which can be analyzed independently of the static equilibrium structure. Notation follows Krugman (1996). Individuals working in the tradeables sector at location x in geography G, a set of locations with a distance metric which for now I take to be a subset of Euclidean space, receive in each period t a real wage $\omega_t(x)$ and a value of regional amenities $\nu_t(x)$, both taken as given by the worker. A worker in location x at time t may decide to move to location x' in period $t+1$ at a cost $c(x'-x)$ which is a convex function of distance traveled. Workers are risk neutral with time-separable additive utility and discount the future at rate β.

In each period, there is heterogeneity in the valuation of locations independent and identically distributed across workers at a given location x following a distribution

known as a Gumbel process (Maddison *et al.* , 2014), a principled generalization to a continuum of the maximum of independent Type I extreme value distributions generating a logistic decision rule as in Caliendo *et al.* (2015).[5] Realized utility of the choice to move from location x to random location $x' \in G$ in period $t+1$ is drawn each period from a Gumbel process with base measure $\mu_{x,E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}}$ with density $\exp(c(x'-x) + \beta E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}(x'))$, where the next period value function is defined by the Bellman equation for the decision problem

$$\tilde{V}_t(x) = \omega_t(x) + \nu_t(x) + G_{\mu_{x,E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}}}(G)$$

with $G_{\mu_{x,E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}}}(G)$ the (randomly distributed) value at time t of the choice to move to a location x' in period $t+1$, with distribution Gumbel$(\log(\int \exp(c(x'-x) + \beta E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}(x')dx'))$.

This formula can be simplified by working with the conditional expectation of the next-period value of this equation: denoting $V_t(x) := E_t\tilde{V}_{t+1}(x)$, obtain

$$V_t(x) = E_t\{\omega_{t+1}(x) + \nu_{t+1}(x) + G_{\mu_{x,V_{t+1}}}(G)\}$$

The corresponding location decision satisfies a multinomial logit decision rule. Defining the partition function as $f(x,V) := \int \exp(c(x'-x) + \beta V(x'))dx'$, the conditional density of choices at location x' given current location x is given by

$$p(x'|x,V) = \frac{1}{f(x,V)} \exp(c(x'-x) + \beta V(x')).$$

Using the closed form characterization for the expectation of a Gumbel distributed random variable, it is possible to write this object in terms of the partition function,

---

[5]A Gumbel process with base measure μ (not necessarily a probability measure) assigns to each *measurable subset* B of G a random utility value $G_\mu(B)$ with distribution Gumbel$(\log\mu(B))$, such that $G_\mu(B)$ is independent of $G_\mu(B^c)$ and $G_\mu(A \cup B) = \max\{G_\mu(A), G_\mu(B)\}$. A Gumbel process with base measure μ with density $\exp(v(x'))$ with respect to dominating measure dx' induces a Gibbs distribution of optimal choices with probability density proportional to $\exp(v(x'))$ and a distribution of ex-post utility of these optimal choices $G_\mu(G) \sim$ Gumbel$(\log\mu(G))$. Notably, when the choice set of $x' \in G$ is finite, this produces choice probabilities and utility distribution identical to those which would be produced by agents who maximize utility over choices $v(x') + \epsilon(x')$ with $\epsilon(x')$ independent Type I extreme value heterogeneity added to the deterministic value of each choice.

allowing the Bellman equation to be simplified to

$$V_t(x) = E_t[\omega_{t+1}(x) + \nu_{t+1}(x) + \log f(x, V_{t+1}) + \gamma] \tag{3.1}$$

where γ is the Euler-Mascheroni constant (≈ 0.577). Due to this explicit form, no numerical optimization is needed to compute the value function.

The above constitutes the forward looking component of the model. To determine the implications of the chosen policy for dynamics of the equilibrium, assume that *at each location* there is a continuum of workers, who each receive independent and identically distributed preference shocks, and that the total mass of workers has measure 1 and is distributed across locations at time t with density at location x given by $\lambda_t(x)$. Since the conditional density over locations given an initial state x is given by $p(x'|x, V)$, the time evolution of the density of workers across regions is given by the (adjoint) Markov transition operator

$$\lambda_{t+1}(x') = \int_G p(x'|x, V_t)\lambda_t(x)dx \tag{3.2}$$

taking the current population distribution $\lambda_t(x)$ to the next period distribution $\lambda_{t+1}(x)$.

Together, λ_t and V_t constitute the endogenous function valued state variables of the model. To complete the model, one computes a static spatial equilibrium which generates a value of real wages at each location $\omega_t(x)$ given a distribution of population across places. A number of assumptions on market structure, trade, and geographical spillovers are possible here, with many models of trade and geography taking similar functional forms as discussed by Allen & Arkolakis (2014). A simple benchmark choice is the model of increasing returns, monopolistic competition, and iceberg trade costs of Krugman (1996), whose static structure (recalled in Appendix D.1) can be borrowed without change to determine wages given population: for our purposes, it suffices to note that it induces a differentiable nonlinear operator $\omega(\lambda_t(.))(x)$ giving a spatial distribution of real wages each period as a deterministic function of the predetermined population distribution.

The dynamic specification of the model is completed by the inclusion of aggregate uncertainty. For the purpose of the decision problem over locations, any source of uncertainty which affects the static equilibrium of the model exerts its effect only through its impact on expected real living standards at different locations,

$\omega_t(x) + \nu_t(x)$. Amenity value is exogenous in this specification of the model, and shocks to amenities across locations can reflect natural mechanisms like patterns of weather or natural disasters, or outcomes of (exogenous) local policies. Disturbances to variables determined within the static equilibrium of the model, such as changes in productivity (which may vary by location) in traded or nontraded sectors, changes in trade costs, or relative preferences for different varieties of good, will all show up in real wages. Because these are determined as the outcome of a purely static process, any persistence in these deviations (aside from that transmitted through the dynamics of population, described above), must come from outside the model. As a result, for the purposes of deriving the dynamics of economic activity and population, it is equivalent to model all shocks as changes to the exogenous value of amenities $\nu_t(x)$ at time t, and to provide exogenously specified dynamics for these shocks.

While many forms are possible, because the model will end up being linearized, it is sufficient to consider a linear specification for the dynamics of $\nu_t(x)$. For simplicity of illustration and, later, computation, I consider a first order functional autoregression specification, following Bosq (2000),[6] with translation invariant transition operator, thereby restricting to shocks which do not diffuse differently from ex-ante identical locations:

$$\nu_{t+1}(x) = \int_G \Gamma(x - z)\nu_t(z)dz + \sigma\varepsilon_{t+1}(x) \tag{3.3}$$

Here $\Gamma(.)$ is some bounded, smooth, square-integrable function parameterizing the degree of spatial diffusion of shocks and $\varepsilon_t(x)$ is an i.i.d. function valued Banach random element with covariance operator Σ. This equation takes form $x_2' = h_2(x_2) + \sigma z'$ with $x_2 = \nu$, $h(x_2) = \int \Gamma(x - z)[.]dz$ and $z = \varepsilon$. Note that the additive formulation of the shock ν_t is without loss of generality even when interpreted as shocks to the trade component of the model, as subsequent to linearization, up to appropriate reparameterization of Γ and Σ, all specifications lead to a representation in the linearized Bellman equation as an additive shock to $\omega_t(x)$.

To express this model in format appropriate for solution by a functional linear rational expectations algorithm, note that the model may be expressed recursively with F given by equations (3.1), (3.2), and (3.3), in terms of predetermined variables $x_1 := \lambda(x)$ $x_2 := \nu(x)$ and jump variable $y := V(x)$ and their next period values λ', ν', V', solving out the static variables to obtain $\omega_t = \omega(\lambda_t)$. I consider (per-

---

[6]See Appendix D.2 for discussion of how this form could be derived from standard dynamic panel data specifications.

14

turbations of) V and ν as elements of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and perturbations of λ, a probability distribution, as an element of $L_0^2(\mathbb{R})$, the space of square integrable functions on $\mathbb{R}$ integrating to 0, ensuring that densities integrate to 1.

In what follows, I will show how to take the derivatives of a model expressed in this form and use them to solve for the linearized dynamics and responses of the state variables of the model to endogenous and exogenous changes.

4   Characterization of Equilibrium Solution

Given a model expressed in the form above, a linear approximation of its solution can be constructed by linearizing the equilibrium conditions and applying a decomposition into components which may be solved separately and recursively, one whose evolution may be expressed as a function of past variables and another which is solved by iterating forward expectations of future variables. While in some models, the components which are solved by looking backwards and the components which are solved by looking forwards may be identified with separate variables in the system,[7] this is not true in general. Instead, this separation must be determined endogenously in such a way that initial and end point conditions of the system are satisfied. This often consists of the requirement that some choice variables or other endogenous variables must be chosen to affect the expected evolution of other variables so that they satisfy an endpoint condition.

Most commonly (at least in real models: see Cochrane (2011) for a discussion of complications in nominal models), long-run behavior is determined by a condition, such as transversality, which is satisfied when variables follow a dynamic path which is stationary. While many types of long run restrictions are possible in models with function valued state variables, I will provide an algorithm for this most common case, in which the specified model takes recursive form over an infinite horizon and endpoint conditions require a stationary solution. Although some modification is possible, including requiring asymptotic convergence (or slow divergence) at a particular rate possibly above or below 1, due to the infinite dimensional nature of the parameter space, arbitrary endpoint conditions introduce substantial complications and so these will not be discussed further.

The requirement that it is possible to separate into solvable components also

---

[7]See Appendix C for treatment of this case

15

imposes one more technical limitation: to ensure orthogonality of projections, in what follows, I specialize from the setting of arbitrary Banach spaces to require all variables to live on separable Hilbert spaces: $\mathcal{H}_1 = \mathcal{H}_x \times \mathcal{H}_y$ and $\mathcal{H}_2$ replace $\mathcal{B}_1 = \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y$ and $\mathcal{B}_2$, respectively. For models defined on spaces which can be densely embedded into a Hilbert space, it is often possible to extend the derivatives to the full Hilbert space by completion. However, norm convergence results must then be taken with respect to the Hilbert space norm: see Appendix C for details.

For an economic model with recursive solution which is differentiable and generates a stationary stochastic process, I describe necessary conditions that the functional derivatives of the solution operators $g(.)$ and $h(.)$ must satisfy, which will allow these derivatives to be calculated numerically.

Let the equilibrium conditions for the model of interest be given by 2.2 on page 8

$$G(x,\sigma) := \mathbb{E}F(x, g(x,\sigma), h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', \sigma), \sigma) = 0$$

for all x, σ and assume $G(x,\sigma)$ is Fréchet differentiable with respect to x, σ.

Take the derivative with respect to x (evaluated at $(x^*, x^*, y^*, y^*, 0)$) to obtain

$$F_x + F_{x'}h_x + F_y g_x + F_{y'} g_x h_x = 0$$

In matrix form

$$\begin{bmatrix} F_{x'} & F_{y'} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & g_x \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ h_x \end{bmatrix} = -\begin{bmatrix} F_x & F_y \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I \\ g_x \end{bmatrix} \tag{4.1}$$

Define $A = \begin{bmatrix} F_{x'} & F_{y'} \end{bmatrix}$, $B = -\begin{bmatrix} F_x & F_y \end{bmatrix}$ mapping $\mathcal{H}_1 := \mathcal{H}_x \times \mathcal{H}_y \to \mathcal{H}_2$.

I seek to partially characterize the policy operators $h(x,\sigma)$ and $g(x,\sigma)$ by solving for their first derivatives with respect to the 'predetermined' state variable x, h_x and g_x. Written as

$$A \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & g_x \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ h_x \end{bmatrix} = B \begin{bmatrix} I \\ g_x \end{bmatrix}$$

this can be seen as an equation in terms of a pair of linear operators (B, A) which may be solved in terms of a joint decomposition of the pair. In general, multiple solutions to this system are possible: however, additional considerations provide some

constraint as to the nature of acceptable solutions. In particular, conditions such as transversality conditions in optimization and No Ponzi Game conditions often rule out equilibria in which (some) state variables explode.

As a result, I seek a solution to these equilibrium conditions which also induces stable, or stationary, dynamics. For finite dimensional deterministic dynamical systems, sufficient conditions for the local stability around the steady state may be characterized by the eigenvalues of the linearized transition rule: in discrete time, eigenvalues less than one in modulus imply stability. For infinite dimensional dynamical systems, analogous conditions apply (see Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Ch. IV.3)). For rational expectations models characterized in terms of expectations, dynamics of state variables may be characterized not only by past values, but also by expectations of future values, and, in particular, certain variables may be allowed to 'jump,' which is to say that in response to a stochastic change in the current state, some variables may change discontinuously in order to satisfy the equilibrium conditions. As a result, stability conditions for this class of models differ from those for deterministic dynamical systems. Most notably, they may exhibit 'saddle-path stability,' in which the system evolves toward the steady state only along a lower-dimensional manifold and so only a subset of eigenvalues satisfy the stability conditions. A stable solution exists in such a case if the jump variables may adjust to ensure that the system stays on this stable manifold.

In the finite dimensional case, stable solutions to this matrix pair equation may be characterized in terms of the Jordan decomposition of the pair, as in the seminal work of Blanchard & Kahn (1980), or in the case where singularity may be possible or numerical stability is desired, in terms of the generalized Schur decomposition as in Klein (2000). In the infinite dimensional case, one may, under certain regularity conditions, apply analogues of these decompositions. To provide robustness to singularity and ensure numerical stability, this paper applies an analogue of the generalized Schur decomposition. As such a decomposition appears to be absent from the literature, Appendix A provides a detailed characterization and a proof of existence under a mild set of regularity conditions. The key idea of the proof is to use the generalized resolvent operator to construct potentially non-orthogonal subspaces on which the operator pair acts corresponding to elements of the spectrum outside and inside the unit circle, and then show that orthogonalizing the subspaces to ensure unitarity of

17

the transform preserves the spectrum.[8]

Formally, if (B, A) satisfy the regularity conditions of Lemma (2) in Appendix A, among which are that (B, A) are bounded operators and that (B, A) are Γ-*regular* on the unit circle: $\gamma A - B$ has bounded inverse for any complex γ satisfying $|\gamma| = 1$, i.e. the unit circle is in the resolvent set, there exists a decomposition

$$(B, A) = (Q^* T U, Q^* S U)$$

in which U and Q are unitary operators and S and T may be decomposed as

$$(T, S) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

conformable with the decomposition $Q = \begin{bmatrix} Q_1 \\ Q_2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $U = \begin{bmatrix} U_1 \\ U_2 \end{bmatrix}$ such that the images of their adjoints U_1^* and U_2^* respectively decompose $\mathcal{H}_1$ into two orthogonal subspaces $\mathcal{H}_{11}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{12}$ and the spectrum of (T_{11}, S_{11}) lies inside the unit circle, so S_{11} has bounded inverse. I further decompose U_1, U_2 by considering their actions on $\mathcal{H}_y$ and $\mathcal{H}_x$. Write $U_{11} := U_1 \varphi^X$, $U_{12} := U_1 \varphi^Y$, $U_{21} := U_2 \varphi^X$, $U_{22} := U_2 \varphi^Y$ where $\varphi^X : \mathcal{H}_x \to \mathcal{H}_x \times \{0\} \subseteq \mathcal{H}_1$ and $\varphi^Y : \mathcal{H}_y \to \{0\} \times \mathcal{H}_y \subseteq \mathcal{H}_1$ are imbeddings.

Remark. The assumption of boundedness of the operator pair is not fundamental. Rather, it reflects the choice of space on which the operators are defined. See Kurbatova (2009) for a way in which to define the domain on which the pair acts so that boundedness holds and the above decomposition may be constructed for operator pairs unbounded with respect to the original choice of space $\mathcal{H}_1$ by working on a restricted space. The use of potentially unbounded operators may be useful if equilibrium conditions are defined in terms of differential operators, as is common in continuous time versions of the models studied in this paper, as in Achdou *et al.* (2017). In discrete time, the conditions of interest are generally defined in terms of integral equations and so boundedness usually holds on the original space.

In contrast, Γ-regularity imposes nontrivial restrictions. By requiring existence of a bounded operator with bounded inverse between the two spaces, it requires that $\mathcal{H}_1$

---

[8]For a pair of bounded operators (B, A) each in $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, following Gohberg *et al.* (1990), define the *spectrum* $\sigma(B, A)$ as those $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\lambda A - B$ is not invertible, accompanied by the point ∞ if and only if A does not have bounded inverse, and the *resolvent set* $\rho(B, A)$ as $\mathbb{C}_\infty \backslash \sigma(B, A)$.

and $\mathcal{H}_2$ be isomorphic, reflecting the traditional condition that to have a unique set of solutions, it is necessary that there be as many equations as unknowns. Invertibility on the unit circle also rules out a continuous spectrum in the neighborhood of the unit circle. To see this, note that because the resolvent set of an operator pair is open, invertibility must also hold in an open neighborhood of the unit circle, and so it cannot be the case that the spectrum has a limit point in the unit circle. This rules out unit roots in the dynamics (as in Chang *et al.* (2014)) as well as certain processes with long memory. It also excludes certain classes of operators. A prominent example of an operator pair with a continuous spectrum is an identity paired with a multiplication operator (which can arise as the functional derivative of a composition operator), i.e. (F, I) with $F[g(x)] = f(x) \cdot g(x)$, which has continuous spectrum taking all values attained by $f(x)$. If $|f(x)|$ has a limit point equal to 1, this operator pair is not Γ-regular. In this case a spectral decomposition can be constructed analytically, and a solution will exist with long memory or unit root behavior (depending on the behavior of $f(x)$ as it approaches 1), but for general models which fail to be Γ-regular with no closed form spectral decomposition, numerical approximations of the decomposition based on projection methods may be highly unstable.

The generalized Schur decomposition allows us to rewrite our decomposition as

$$
Q^* \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11} & U_{12} \\ U_{21} & U_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & g_x \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ h_x \end{bmatrix}
$$
$$
= Q^* \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11} & U_{12} \\ U_{21} & U_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I \\ g_x \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2)
$$

Unitarity of Q allows it to cancel on both sides, leaving, after simplification,

$$
\begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)h_x \\ (U_{21} + U_{22}g_x)h_x \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11} + U_{12}g_x \\ U_{21} + U_{22}g_x \end{bmatrix}.
$$

To find a stable solution, first solve for g_x, which determines the jump variables in terms of the predetermined variables, and then use this to find the value of h_x. To ensure that the second line holds trivially, it is sufficient to find $g_x : \mathcal{H}_x \to \mathcal{H}_y$ such that

$$
U_{21} + U_{22}g_x = 0 \quad (4.3)
$$

19

always. In principle, there may be many solutions, one solution, or no solution to this problem. In the case that $U_{22}U_{22}^*$ has bounded inverse on the space $\text{Im}(U_2)$, at least one solution exists, given by what is referred to in numerical analysis as the 'minimum norm solution' (Golub & Van Loan, 1996, Ch. 4) to the linear equation (4.3),

$$g_x = -U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}. \tag{4.4}$$

It is worth noting how the condition that $U_{22}U_{22}^*$ has bounded inverse relates to the eigenvalue criteria in Blanchard & Kahn (1980) and subsequent rational expectations solution procedures. The existence of a bounded inverse implies $U_{22}U_{22}^*$ is bijective, and so U_{22} is surjective onto $\text{Im}(U_2)$, which is mapped isometrically to $\mathcal{H}_{12}$ by the continuous and invertible linear transformation U_2^*. Therefore, there exists a linear surjection from $\mathcal{H}_y \to \mathcal{H}_{12}$. In finite dimensions, this requires that the dimension of the space of 'jump variables' y is at least as large as the dimension of the eigenspace corresponding to the 'unstable' generalized eigenvalues. Note however that in infinite dimensions, both of these spaces are infinite dimensional and the spectrum is generally uncountable, so this criterion cannot be expressed in terms of a relationship between the 'number of eigenvalues greater than one' and the 'number of jump variables'.

There is also an analogous condition characterizing uniqueness of the solution. Consider the case in which U_{22} has nontrivial null space. Then if g_x is a solution and $\tilde{g}$ is an operator whose range is a subset of $\text{Ker } U_{22}$, $g_x + \tilde{g}$ also satisfies $U_{21} + U_{22}(g_x + \tilde{g}) = 0$. Thus, a solution is unique only if U_{22} has trivial null space. Formally, a solution is unique if and only if U_{22} is $\mathcal{H}_y$-complete: $\forall y \in \mathcal{H}_y$, $U_{22}y = 0$ implies $y = 0$. If U_{22} is complete and surjective, then it is bijective, and so, by the bounded inverse theorem has a bounded inverse and so

$$g_x = -U_{22}^{-1}U_{21} \tag{4.5}$$

is the unique solution. In finite dimensions, a necessary condition for a linear operator to have trivial null space is that the domain and range spaces are of the same dimension, corresponding to the case in which the number of jump variables and unstable eigenvalues is exactly equal. Note that while there is a burgeoning literature on the characterization and implications of completeness in econometric models (see, e.g., Andrews (2011)), this is generally in the context of operators which are not surjective and do not have bounded inverse.

If U_{22} is surjective but not complete, the system is said to be underdetermined, and

there may be many solutions, of which $-U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}$, the minimum norm solution is one. In this case, any solution to the system must be equal to $-U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}$ plus an operator $\tilde{g}$ whose range is in the kernel of U_{22}, which is the complement of the range of U_{22}^*, and so for all $x \in \mathcal{H}_x$ $\| -U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}x + \tilde{g}x\| = \| -U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}x\| + \|\tilde{g}x\| \geq \| -U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21}x\|$ hence the description 'minimum norm'. This corresponds to the case in finite dimensions in which there are more jump variables than unstable eigenvalues. In this case, one may calculate a canonical solution with minimum norm, but there are also a continuum of other solutions in which arbitrary terms may be added in the eigenspaces corresponding to the jump variables so long as these terms are sent to zero by the expectation operator. This situation corresponds to the partial identification result when completeness fails in nonparametric instrumental variables estimation described in Santos (2012). While indeterminacy in the finite dimensional case has received extensive study, for brevity and to avoid technical complications, I will consider only cases in which the solution is unique, in which case U_{22}^{-1} is bounded and well defined.

Given a solution for g_x, the evolution equation for the predetermined variables may be expressed in terms of this solution. Imposing condition (4.3), the equilibrium conditions hold if $S_{11}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)h_x = T_{11}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)$. Since S_{11} has bounded inverse by construction, this gives

$$h_x = (U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x) \tag{4.6}$$

is a solution so long as $U_{11} + U_{12}g_x$ has bounded inverse. Moreover, this operator is similar to $S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}$ and so has identical spectrum. In particular, by the construction of S_{11} and T_{11} the spectrum of this operator is inside the complex unit circle. So, by Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Thm IV.3.1), the difference equation $x_{t+1} = h_x x_t$, $x_0 = x \in \mathcal{H}_x$ has a unique solution for any given x, given by $x_t = (h_x)^t x$, which converges to 0. Thus, one can say that h_x is a stable solution. Moreover, under these conditions, Bosq (2000, Thm 3.1) implies that the Hilbert AR(1) functional linear process given by $x_{t+1} = h_x x_t + \xi_t$, where ξ_t is a $\mathcal{H}_x$ random element uncorrelated over t has a unique covariance stationary solution, and so one is justified in referring to h_x as a stationary solution.

Note that existence of a solution to the operator equation (4.1) is a necessary condition for the existence of a differentiable solution consistent with the equilibrium

conditions of the model but is not sufficient. For an overview of high level conditions that might be used to ensure existence of a solution, see Appendix F.

5   Algorithm

Having a formula for the functional derivatives of the policy operators in terms of the functional derivatives of the equilibrium conditions is not sufficient to implement the formula unless the components of that formula, defined in terms of the generalized Schur decomposition, can be found. While there are some cases where this can be done analytically, these require a high degree of structure to be imposed, often requiring the model to take a partial equilibrium structure where aggregate variables are taken as exogenous or requiring individual decisions not to depend on the aggregate state (see Appendix C). Beyond these and some other idiosyncratic cases, a numerical procedure is needed to construct the solution. This can be done using projection of the equilibrium conditions onto a finite set of basis functions, so long as the model takes a structure where the approximation error this introduces can be controlled. Conditions under which this holds can often be verified easily, and in particular hold for the economic geography model described in Section 3. In the following sections, I describe a general method under high level conditions which ensure that a projection representation yields an accurate approximation to a solution, then provide an algorithm and set of low level conditions which provide an example and guide to ensuring the high level conditions using wavelets, a particularly attractive class of basis functions in terms of speed, accuracy, and ease of implementation.

5.1   Numerical Evaluation by Projection

In general equilibrium problems, forward looking decisions both influence and are influenced by the evolution of persistent states. In such cases, it becomes necessary to apply a method which can separate the forward and backward looking subspaces under general conditions. Unfortunately, closed form solutions are rarely available for the generalized Schur decomposition of systems of operator equations and one must instead turn to numerics. For an algorithm to be useful, it must take data which are computable from representations of the derivatives of the equilibrium conditions and output an approximate decomposition. This suggests application of methods based

on sampling, where the derivative operators are approximated by finite dimensional objects to which a decomposition may be applied numerically.

A particularly simple way to perform this approximation is to approximate an infinite dimensional separable Hilbert space by an increasing sequence of subspaces, possibly spanned by a standard set of basis functions. On such spaces, the derivative operators of interest are finite dimensional matrices. As the number of basis functions grows, representation of any function in the space becomes increasingly accurate, and one may hope that at a sufficient level of detail, the finite dimensional system accurately approximates the infinite dimensional one. If this is the case, it may be possible to simply apply solution algorithms for finite dimensional linear rational expectations algorithms to produce finite dimensional approximations of the policy functions.

While intuitively appealing, there is an important step missing in the above logic. In order for the finite dimensional solutions to be accurate, at least asymptotically, it is necessary that when the input of the finite dimensional rational expectation algorithm is sufficiently close to the truth, that the output also be close: the solution must be continuous. While continuity results exist for the generalized Schur decomposition in finite dimensional spaces with respect to the Hilbert-Schmidt norm (Stewart, 1973; Golub & Van Loan, 1996), in infinite dimensions this norm need not even be finite for operators, like the identity, used in practice, and so is overly strong for this application. Therefore, in Appendix B, I demonstrate a generalization of this result to the (weaker) operator norm: for $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, $\|A\|_{op} = \sup_{\|x\|_{\mathcal{H}_a}=1} \|Ax\|_{\mathcal{H}_b}$. If a sampling procedure converges to the true derivatives in operator norm, the generalized Schur decomposition will also converge in the same norm.

While reassuring, continuity in operator norm is in fact of limited applicability without some important auxiliary hypotheses. In particular, it is known that a finite dimensional matrix may approximate an infinite dimensional operator in operator norm only if that operator is compact. This presents something of a difficulty, as essentially no economic models with function valued states have derivatives which are compact operators. However, there exists a limited but far from trivial subclass of models in which it is nevertheless possible to construct the generalized Schur decomposition of a set of operators which consistently approximates the true equilibrium derivatives in operator norm and so to which the continuity result applies. I refer to models which satisfy this condition as *asymptotically diagonal*.

Definition 3. The operator pair (B, A) is *asymptotically diagonal* if there exists a known linear isometry such that $\mathcal{H}_1$ is isometrically isomorphic to $\mathcal{H}_2$, and the representation of the operator pair with respect to this isometry (which will also be denoted (B, A)) satisfies the decomposition $(B, A) = (B_I, A_I) + (B_C, A_C)$ such that B_C and A_C are compact and there exist known finite partitions of $\mathcal{H}_x, \mathcal{H}_y \subset \mathcal{H}_1 \cong \mathcal{H}_2$ into orthogonal subspaces $\{\mathcal{H}_j\}_{j=1}^J$ conformable with the partition into $\mathcal{H}_x$ and $\mathcal{H}_y$, usually corresponding to variables making up X and Y, such that for each pair $(i, j) \in \{1 \dots J\}^2$, $A_{I_{ij}} := \mathrm{Proj}_{\mathcal{H}_i} A_I \mathrm{Proj}_{\mathcal{H}_j}$ and $B_{I_{ij}} := \mathrm{Proj}_{\mathcal{H}_i} B_I \mathrm{Proj}_{\mathcal{H}_j}$ satisfy $A_{I_{ij}}$ and $B_{I_{ij}}$ are each either equal to the zero operator or to a scalar multiple of the identity I_{ij}, where I_{ij} is defined for $i = j$ as the identity operator on $\mathcal{H}_i$ and for $i \neq j$ is defined as the identity from $\mathcal{H}_j$ to $\mathcal{H}_i$ if $\mathcal{H}_i \cong \mathcal{H}_j$.

Informally, this statement says that asymptotically diagonal systems can be broken up into a compact part and a part for which all subcomponents are equal to the identity. The typical form for an asymptotically diagonal operator pair is a set of square block operators acting on a space of J functions, where each block contains an identity operator, a compact operator, or a sum of a compact operator and an identity operator. For example if $J = 2$, (B, A) may take the form

$$\left(\begin{bmatrix} c_1 I_{11} + C_1 & c_2 I_{12} + C_2 \\ c_3 I_{21} + C_3 & c_4 I_{22} + C_4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} c_5 I_{11} + C_5 & c_6 I_{12} + C_6 \\ c_7 I_{21} + C_7 & c_8 I_{22} + C_8 \end{bmatrix} \right) \tag{5.1}$$

where c_1 through c_8 are real scalars (possibly 0) and C_1 through C_8 are compact operators, for example integral operators of the form $\int K(x, z)[f(z)]dz$ for some bounded smooth function $K(x, z) : [0, 1)^2 \to \mathbb{R}^1$ in the case where $\mathcal{H}_j$ is $L^2[0, 1)$. Here (B_C, A_C) collects the C components and (B_I, A_I) collects the cI components.

Asymptotic diagonality ensures that the model has a tractable form 'up to a compact perturbation.' In particular, it can be seen that (B_I, A_I) is block diagonal with respect to any orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{H}_1$ conformable with the partition into subspaces $\{\mathcal{H}_j\}_{j=1}^J$ with blocks which are J-dimensional square pencils which are, importantly, all identical. For example, for a pair in the form of (5.1), for any orthonormal basis $\{\phi_{i1}\}_{i=1}^\infty$ of $\mathcal{H}_{j=1}$, which must have a corresponding basis $\{\phi_{i2}\}_{i=1}^\infty$ for $\mathcal{H}_{j=2}$ if $\mathcal{H}_{j=1} \cong \mathcal{H}_{j=2}$, (if not, the off-diagonal components c_2, c_3, c_6, and c_7 must all be 0, as no identity can be defined), the action of (B_I, A_I) on the coefficients corresponding

to functions (ϕ_{i1}, ϕ_{i2}) is given by the pair of 2×2 matrices

$$\left(\begin{bmatrix} c_1 & c_2 \\ c_3 & c_4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} c_5 & c_6 \\ c_7 & c_8 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

for *any* $i = 1 \ldots \infty$. This provides a representation of (B_I, A_I) as block diagonal with respect to the the orthonormal basis $\{\{e_{ij}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}\}_{j=1}^{2}$ of $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_{j=1} \times \mathcal{H}_{j=2}$ with $e_{i1} = (\phi_{i1}, 0)$, $e_{i2} = (0, \phi_{i2})$, with blocks corresponding to pairs identified by common index i. As a result, to construct the generalized Schur decomposition of (B_I, A_I), it suffices to calculate a single J-dimensional decomposition of the matrix pencil representing any particular block and to concatenate the identical and orthogonal blocks.

Generally speaking, the isometry condition will be fulfilled by any model which uniquely determines an equilibrium, as it generalizes the familiar requirement that a model have an identical number of equations and unknowns, so the space into which the equilibrium conditions map will generally have a canonical isomorphism to the space of unknown states. This holds similarly for the J subspaces, which usually correspond to interpretable variables in the context of the model, with isomorphisms between spaces of variables likewise defined canonically. For example, in the geography model, the distribution of wages and the distribution of amenities may be defined as functions on the same space defined in the same units.

The use of a restriction of this kind is that identity components are common components of the derivative operators of many models, because many conditions take the form of defining a variable or assigning it a value, but are not compact, and so cannot be approximated directly by finite dimensional approximations. The remainder of (B_I, A_I) after projection onto any subspace does not go to 0, but because it takes a tractable diagonal form, it is known. In contrast, for the compact component, the remainder when projecting onto an increasing sequence of subspaces does go to 0 and so is asymptotically negligible. By combining these two components, it is possible to use a finite dimensional projection to approximate the operator pencil on a finite dimensional subspace and leave a remainder on the orthogonal complement space which is known up to an asymptotically negligible perturbation. In this way, one can use a finite set of computations to compute a generalized Schur decomposition corresponding to an operator pencil which is close in norm to the true infinite dimensional pencil, and so by the continuity in norm of the decomposition, yields a

decomposition which is close to the true one.

When the derivatives of the equilibrium conditions of a model are asymptotically diagonal (and a unique stable equilibrium exists local to the steady state), computation of the first order approximation of the policy operators is both straightforward and computationally fast, in the sense that a consistent approximation can be computed to any desired precision in time polynomial in the number of basis functions used in the approximation. The procedure consists of projecting the equilibrium derivative operators onto a finite dimensional orthogonal subspace, computing the policy operators on that subspace by applying directly a standard first order rational expectations solution algorithm for finite dimensional models, and computing the policy operator on the orthogonal complement of that subspace analytically using (B_I, A_I). The operator norm precision of the resulting approximation is then asymptotically of no higher order than the operator norm error in the projection approximation of (B_C, A_C). While compactness alone ensures only that this projection error goes to 0 as the number of basis functions increases, when the compact component takes the form of integral operators $\int K(x, z)[f(z)]dz$, mild smoothness conditions (or other limited complexity conditions) on the kernel can be used to ensure a rate of convergence. Moreover, in the case where projections cannot be calculated analytically, for example because the kernel function can only be accessed by point evaluation and so integrals must be computed approximately by quadrature, similar smoothness conditions ensure that the additional error induced is controllable. Alternately, in some cases one may estimate a operator from data. In this case, plugging in any matrix-valued operator norm consistent estimator (as in Guillas (2001) for functional autoregressions, or Park & Qian (2012) or Benatia *et al.* (2015) for functional regression) produces a consistent estimator of the policy functions.

As a very wide variety of schemes for approximating such an operator may be applied, I first provide a general purpose bound in terms of operator norm error, under a set of high level sufficient conditions on the approximation.

Condition 1. (i) (B, A) $\mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2$ is an asymptotically diagonal pair of bounded operators, Γ-regular with respect to closed Cauchy curve Γ (i.e., per Definition (1) in Appendix A, $\lambda A - B$ is invertible for all λ in a closed curve $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{C}_\infty$ separating the extended complex plane into an interior and exterior subsets), with generalized

Schur decomposition with respect to Γ given by

$$(B, A) = [Q_1^*, Q_2^*] \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} & , & S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} & & 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_1 \\ U_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) dif$\left(\begin{matrix} T_{11} & S_{11} \\ T_{22} & S_{22} \end{matrix} \right) > 0$, where the dif operator is defined in (B.4) in Appendix B as a measure of continuity of the generalized Schur decomposition with respect to perturbations

(iii) $U_{22} = U_2 \varphi^X$ is invertible

Remark. On Condition (1): These conditions on the derivatives of the model are not entirely general but apply to fairly broad classes of models. Asymptotic diagonality is a smoothness condition which rules out certain classes of models which display excessive 'frequency mixing'. The general property of operators which this rules out is a transfer of energy between frequencies which fails to dissipate as frequency increases to infinity: an archetypal example would be a map involving the delta function. In these cases, input functions with a high degree of regularity are passed to outputs which may be irregular, impeding the ability to represent the system uniformly in time with respect to classes of regular functions which can be well approximated by standard function approximation. This transfer of energy to higher and higher frequencies is commonly described in models of physical systems as an aspect of (weak) turbulence, and generally requires numerical methods different from those described here. It may often be ensured by including additional smoothing or noise conditions in the model, or other transformations: see Appendix C for discussion.

Γ-regularity ensures that forward and backward looking components of the system can be distinguished, and imposes some restriction on the time series properties of the model, as described above.

Condition (ii) on the dif operator of the pair similarly imposes that the forward and backward looking components are well-separated, ensuring their continuity with respect to small perturbations in the operators: see Appendix B for an exact definition and further discussion. Heuristically speaking, the dif constant is a measure of the separation between the forward and backward subspaces which depends on the spectral gap between the subspaces and the degree of nonnormality (or deviation from a diagonalizable pair) of the operator pair. In the case where the operator pair

27

(B, A) is diagonalizable, it is equal to the minimum distance between the spectra of (T_{11}, S_{11}) and (T_{22}, S_{22}) and so positivity is implied by Γ-regularity. Γ-regularity is also sufficient in the case that (B, A) is finite dimensional (see Stewart & Sun (1990) Thm VI.1.11) or in the case in which either B or A is invertible, in which case it follows from the Sylvester-Rosenblum theorem for operators (Bhatia & Rosenthal, 1997), though the exact size will depend on the degree of nonnormality.

Condition (iii) is necessary for existence and uniqueness of derivatives of a policy function which are consistent with the equilibrium conditions: it ensures that there is a correct model to be approximated.

To provide a consistent approximation, it is necessary to choose a sequence of finite dimensional orthogonal subspaces which converge to $\mathcal{H}$. Generally these will be defined as the closed linear span of an increasing sequence of functions in a set of complete orthonormal bases of $\{\mathcal{H}_j\}_{j=1}^J$, though orthonormality is mainly a computational and notational convenience. As one often does not have access to an exact projection, it is sufficient to request a consistent approximation to one instead. For consistency, approximations should satisfy the following properties

Condition 2. (i) Let $\{\pi_j^{K_j}\}_{j=1}^J$ be J orthogonal projections onto K_j-dimensional orthogonal subspaces of $\{\mathcal{H}_j\}_{j=1}^J$ respectively such that Im $\pi_i^{K_i} \cong$ Im $\pi_j^{K_j}$ if $\mathcal{H}_i \cong \mathcal{H}_j$ (i.e., π_j^K and $\pi_i^{K_i}$ map to subspaces which are identified of elements of the partition which are themselves identified), and let $\pi^K = \sum_{j=1}^J \pi_j^{K_j}$ project onto the $K = \sum_{j=1}^J K_j$ -dimensional union of these subspaces. Define $(B^K, A^K) := \pi^K(B, A)\pi^K$, and $(B_C^K, A_C^K) := \pi^K(B_C, A_C)\pi^K$. Let

$$\max\{\left\|B_C^K - B_C\right\|_{op}, \left\|A_C^K - A_C\right\|_{op}\} \leq \eta_K$$

for some sequence η_K decreasing to 0 as $K \to \infty$.

(ii) Let $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ be a sequence of matrix approximations of (B^K, A^K) on a Euclidean space isomorphic to Im π^K satisfying

$$\max\{\left\|\tilde{B}^K - B^K\right\|_{op}, \left\|\tilde{A}^K - A^K\right\|_{op}\} \leq \zeta_K$$

for some sequence ζ_K decreasing to 0 as $K \to \infty$.

In practice, as the J subspaces of $\mathcal{H}$ represent distinct functions used as state variables (for example, a value function and a distribution over agents), these ap-

proximations are given by first choosing an appropriate complete series basis for each function of interest and representing each function with respect to an increasing number of terms in that series. The numerical representation of the operators with respect to the series $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ is then calculated by interpolation, quadrature, exact sampling in some special cases, or estimation. Note that consistency of the projections is required only over (B_C, A_C). Both on and off the projected space, (B_I, A_I) has exact representation as a set of scalar multiples of identity matrices on Im π^K and as identity operators on the orthogonal complement of that space.

Given a choice of spaces onto which to project and a consistent approximation of the projected operators, approximate solutions may be defined by calculating policy operators $\tilde{g}_x^K$, $\tilde{h}_x^K$ and $g_x^{K\perp}, h_x^{K\perp}$ from (B, A) separately on Im π^K and Ker π^K, respectively and composing them, as follows.

Denote the generalized Schur decomposition with respect to Γ of the finite dimensional matrix representation of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ as

$$[\tilde{Q}_1^{*K}, \tilde{Q}_2^{*K}] \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{T}_{11}^K & \tilde{T}_{12}^K \\ 0 & \tilde{T}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{S}_{11}^K & \tilde{S}_{12}^K \\ 0 & \tilde{S}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{U}_{11}^K & \tilde{U}_{12}^K \\ \tilde{U}_{21}^K & \tilde{U}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix}.$$

Note that because this is a finite dimensional matrix pair, this may be calculated in $O(K^3)$ time by the QZ algorithm: see Golub & Van Loan (1996). Applying the formulas for the policy operators to this restricted space, define $\tilde{g}_x^K = -(\tilde{U}_{22}^K)^{-1}\tilde{U}_{21}^K$, $\tilde{h}_x^K = (\tilde{U}_{11}^K + \tilde{U}_{12}^K\tilde{g}_X^K)^{-1}(\tilde{S}_{11}^K)^{-1}\tilde{T}_{11}^K(\tilde{U}_{11}^K + \tilde{U}_{12}^K\tilde{g}_X^K)$. These define an approximation of g_x and h_x respectively on the space Im π^K.

As the restriction of the policy function to this space need not, in general, consistently approximate the policy functions over $\mathcal{H}_1$ as a whole, supplement by an approximation on the orthogonal complement space, $g_x^{K\perp}, h_x^{K\perp}$ by considering only (B_I, A_I) on this space. This is a reasonable approximation because for K large enough, the contribution of (B_C, A_C) on the remainder becomes negligible. Consider a set of complete orthonormal bases of $\mathcal{H}_j$, $\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^J$, $i = 1\ldots\infty$, where e_{sj} and e_{tk} are identified if $s = t$ and $\mathcal{H}_j \cong \mathcal{H}_k$. Then, by construction, for all i, (B_I, A_I) maps the closure of their span $\overline{\text{Span}}\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^J$ to itself and moreover, the representation of this map is identical for all i. Informally, (B_I, A_I) is ($\mathcal{H}$-equivalent to by Parseval's identity) a block diagonal matrix pair over this complete orthonormal basis with identical $J \times J$ blocks. Further, because an identity matrix has identity representation with respect to any choice of basis, one may choose a basis such that $\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^J$, $i = K + 1\ldots\infty$

are a complete orthonormal basis of Ker π^K (these may or may not be the remaining elements of an orthonormal basis the projection onto the span of which defines π^K, though this representation is convenient). By the orthogonality of the blocks, it is sufficient to define the policy function separately on each block. This can be done by applying the solution formula to any J-dimensional block i, regarded as a pair of $J \times J$ matrices, (B_I^i, A_I^i). These have generalized Schur decomposition

$$(B_I^i, A_I^i) = [Q_1^{i*}, Q_2^{i*}] \begin{bmatrix} T_{11}^i & T_{12}^i \\ 0 & T_{22}^i \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} S_{11}^i & S_{12}^i \\ 0 & S_{22}^i \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11}^i & U_{12}^i \\ U_{21}^i & U_{22}^i \end{bmatrix}$$

on each block i, where U_{11}^i and U_{21}^i acts on the J_1 elements contained in $\mathcal{H}_x$ and U_{12}^i and U_{22}^i act on the $J - J_1$ elements contained in $\mathcal{H}_y$. The corresponding block of the policy operators are given by $g_x^i = -(U_{22}^i)^{-1}U_{21}^i$, $h_x^i = (U_{11}^i + U_{12}^i g_x^i)^{-1}(S_{11}^i)^{-1}T_{11}^i(U_{11}^i + U_{12}^i g_x^i)$. To define an approximation on the orthogonal complement of Im π^K, simply concatenate the blocks, giving sequential representations

$$g_x^{K\perp} = \sum_{i=K+1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=J_1+1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{J_1} (g_x^i)_{(j-J_1)k} \langle e_{ik}, [.] \rangle e_{ij}$$

and

$$h_x^{K\perp} = \sum_{i=K+1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{J_1} \sum_{k=1}^{J_1} (h_x^i)_{jk} \langle e_{ik}, [.] \rangle e_{ij}.$$

Note that since each block is identical, calculation of the policy function needs to be performed for only one representative block, with running time dominated by the QZ algorithm, of order $O(J^3)$, typically negligible.

The approximation to the policy operators on $\mathcal{H}$ are given by $g_K := \tilde{g}_x^K + g_x^{K\perp}$ and $h_K := \tilde{h}_x^K + h_x^{K\perp}$. A summary of the steps leading to their construction is provided as Algorithm 1. Under the conditions given, these aproximations are consistent in operator norm.

Theorem 1. *Let (B, A) and their approximations $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ satisfy Conditions (1) and (2). Then $\|g_K - g_x\|_{op} \to 0$ and $\|h_K - h_x\|_{op} \to 0$ as $K \to \infty$. In particular, there exists some $\bar{K}$ and some constant C such that for $K > \bar{K}$, $\|g_K - g_x\|_{op} \leq C(\zeta_K + \eta_K)$ and $\|h_K - h_x\|_{op} \leq C(\zeta_K + \eta_K)$.*

Proof. See Appendix. □

The idea behind the consistency argument is to show that the generalized Schur decomposition of the combined approximation on and off Im π^K converges in operator norm and then apply perturbation theorems ensuring continuity in operator norm for the Schur projectors and Rayleigh components. Then by applying orthogonality, one can show that the policy functions corresponding to the generalized Schur decompositions on and off Im π^K are equivalent to the policy functions corresponding to the Schur decomposition of the approximate operator as a whole. The exact constant C and $\bar{K}$ are both decreasing functions of the dif constant of (B, A). While the rate of convergence is unaffected, for highly non-normal operators or those with a small gap between the spectrum of the forward and backward looking components, the constant on the rate may be large.

This result may easily be seen to be rate optimal. Consider a model of the form $(B, A) = (-h_x, I)$, with h_x compact and stable; the operator norm approximation rate for the policy operator is then identical to the approximation rate of $B_C = h_x$.

5.2   Implementation: Wavelet Transform

Overall, the computational effort needed to obtain ϵ-close approximations is driven by the rates η_K and ζ_K. If efficient (or exact) evaluation schemes are used, the projection error η_K tends to dominate: this may not be the case if the value of the projection coefficients is determined by estimation, in which case the accuracy of ζ_K is limited by the quantity of data available. To more precisely quantify the size of these errors, I provide an example of a set of conditions on (B, A), the approximating subspace Im π^K, and the evaluation method for the projections which provides precise rates.

In particular, I demonstrate approximate projection onto a Coiflet wavelet basis using a 1-point quadrature scheme derived from Beylkin *et al.* (1991). Rates of convergence are shown for Fredholm integral operators with Hölder-continuous periodic kernel over compact support. Fredholm integral operators are a canonical example of operators which are given by a compact component and potentially a component given by an identity and appear frequently in examples including the model of Section 3. Wavelet sampling methods provide a particularly fast and accurate method for approximating these operators even when the kernel can only be accessed by pointwise evaluation, perhaps because it is a complicated function which has itself been numerically approximated, such as a function of a steady state calculated numerically by

Algorithm 1 Construction of g_K, h_K

Inputs: An equilibrium operator $F(x, y, x', y', \sigma)$ satisfying Condition 1, Im π^K a K-dimensional subspace satisfying Condition 2, and $\{\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^{J}\}_{i=K+1}^{\infty}$ a conformable orthonormal basis for the orthogonal complement of Im π^K

Output: g_K, h_K approximate functional derivatives of recursive solution with respect to x

1. Compute steady state (x^*, y^*) s.t. $F(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0) = 0$

2. $(B, A) \leftarrow \left(-\begin{bmatrix} F_x & F_y \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} F_{x'} & F_{y'} \end{bmatrix} \right)$ Calculate functional derivatives at steady state

3. Decompose (B, A) into $(B_I, A_I) + (B_C, A_C)$ compact and identity components as per Definition 3

4. Construct $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$, a K-dimensional approximate projection of (B, A) onto Im π^K, satisfying Condition 2, using Algorithm 2 or other method

5. Build components of policy operator on Im π^K and Ker π^K

   (a) Build policy operators on Im π^K using approximate projections

      i. $[\tilde{Q}_1^{*K}, \tilde{Q}_2^{*K}] \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{T}_{11}^K & \tilde{T}_{12}^K \\ 0 & \tilde{T}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{S}_{11}^K & \tilde{S}_{12}^K \\ 0 & \tilde{S}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{U}_{11}^K & \tilde{U}_{12}^K \\ \tilde{U}_{21}^K & \tilde{U}_{22}^K \end{bmatrix} \leftarrow QZ(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$
         Apply QZ algorithm to obtain generalized Schur decomposition of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$

      ii. $\tilde{g}_x^K \leftarrow -(\tilde{U}_{22}^K)^{-1} \tilde{U}_{21}^K$, $\tilde{h}_x^K \leftarrow (\tilde{U}_{11}^K + \tilde{U}_{12}^K \tilde{g}_X^K)^{-1}(\tilde{S}_{11}^K)^{-1}\tilde{T}_{11}^K(\tilde{U}_{11}^K + \tilde{U}_{12}^K \tilde{g}_X^K)$

   (b) Build policy operators on Ker π^K by analytical decomposition of (B_I, A_I)

      i. $[(B_I^i, A_I^i)]_{jk} \leftarrow \langle B_I e_{ij}, e_{ik} \rangle, \langle A_I e_{ij}, e_{ik} \rangle \; \forall j, k = 1 \ldots J$ Construct (B_I^i, A_I^i) (identical for all i) using $\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^{J}$ for some i

      ii. $[Q_1^{i*}, Q_2^{i*}] \begin{bmatrix} T_{11}^i & T_{12}^i \\ 0 & T_{22}^i \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} S_{11}^i & S_{12}^i \\ 0 & S_{22}^i \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11}^i & U_{12}^i \\ U_{21}^i & U_{22}^i \end{bmatrix} \leftarrow QZ(B_I^i, A_I^i)$ Apply QZ algorithm to (B_I^i, A_I^i)

      iii. $g_x^i \leftarrow -(U_{22}^i)^{-1} U_{21}^i$, $h_x^i \leftarrow (U_{11}^i + U_{12}^i g_x^i)^{-1}(S_{11}^i)^{-1} T_{11}^i (U_{11}^i + U_{12}^i g_x^i)$ Build policy functions over $\overline{\text{Span}}\{e_{ij}\}_{j=1}^{J}$

      iv. Add identical components for all $i = K+1 \ldots \infty$

      $$g_x^{K\perp} = \sum_{i=K+1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=J_1+1}^{J} \sum_{k=1}^{J_1} (g_x^i)_{(j-J_1)k} \langle e_{ik}, [.] \rangle e_{ij}$$

      $$h_x^{K\perp} = \sum_{i=K+1}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{J_1} \sum_{k=1}^{J_1} (h_x^i)_{jk} \langle e_{ik}, [.] \rangle e_{ij}$$

      for J_1 blocks in $\mathcal{H}_x$, $J - J_1$ in $\mathcal{H}_y$.

6. $g_K \leftarrow \tilde{g}_x^K + g_x^{K\perp}$, $h_K \leftarrow \tilde{h}_x^K + h_x^{K\perp}$ Add components

---

fixed point iteration.

Condition 3. (i) Let $\{\mathcal{H}_j\}_{j=1}^J$ be given by the spaces of square integrable periodic functions of dimension d_j with domain normalizable to $[0,1)^{d_j}$, $\mathcal{H}_j = L^2_{per}[0,1)^{d_j}$. Let (B_C, A_C) consist on each block (i,j) of $r = B$ or $r = A$ of integral operators mapping $f(y) \in \mathcal{H}_j$ to $f(x) \in \mathcal{H}_i$ $f(x) = \int_{[0,1)^{d_j}} K_{r,ij}(x,y)[f(y)]dy$ such that for all r, i, j

$$\sup_{x,y \in [0,1)^{d_i} \times [0,1)^{d_j}} |K_{r,ij}(x,y)| < \infty \text{ and } K_{r,ij}(x,y) \in \Lambda^{\alpha_{r,ij}}([0,1)^{d_i} \times [0,1)^{d_j}), \text{ the space of}$$

$\alpha_{r,ij}$-Hölder continuous periodic functions on $[0,1)^{d_i} \times [0,1)^{d_j}$ for some $\alpha_{r,ij} > 0$.[9]

(ii) Let Im π^{K_j} be the subspace spanned for each j by a tensor product of d_j one-dimensional orthonormal Coiflet wavelet multiresolution analyses with mother wavelet ψ and scaling function ϕ with each bounded, having support which is a compact interval, and a number of vanishing moments greater than or equal to $\min_{r,i,j} \alpha_{r,ij}$. Let the matrix representation of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ on this space be given by $\pi^K(B_I, A_I)\pi^K$ plus a matrix where the i,j block is given by the discrete wavelet transforms over rows then columns of the $K_i \times K_j$ matrix whose (s,t) entry is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{K_i K_j}} K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t)$, where $\{x_s\}_{s=1}^{K_i}$ and $\{y_t\}_{t=1}^{K_j}$ are dyadic grids over $[0,1)^{d_i}$ and $[0,1)^{d_j}$ respectively.

Remark. On (i): These assumptions can be slightly relaxed through different choices of wavelet basis. Periodicity is convenient for proofs because it does not require any special treatment of boundaries; it also fits the example model presented. Depending on the problem, this may be relaxed by one of a number of boundary extension methods: see Mallat (2008). Compact support can be replaced by a tail condition by sampling an increasing spatial domain. Boundedness of the kernel can likewise be dispensed with provided the operator remains compact and some knowledge of the singularity is available: Beylkin *et al.* (1991) provides methods and convergence results for many singular integral operators. It is likely that Hölder regularity could be replaced with more general Besov classes which may exhibit less uniform regularity, at the expense of more difficult analysis of the quadrature approximation.

On (ii): As described, the procedure represents each kernel in terms of a tensor product of multiresolution wavelet bases instead of a single multidimensional multiresolution analysis as advocated in Beylkin *et al.* (1991). A tensor product

---

[9] A function f(x) is Hölder continuous on domain I of order $\alpha \in (0,1]$ if $\sup_{x,y \in I} |f(x) - f(y)| \leq K|x - y|^\alpha$ and is Hölder continuous of non-integer order $\alpha > 1$ if it is $\lfloor \alpha \rfloor$ times continuously differentiable with $\lfloor \alpha \rfloor^{th}$ derivatives Hölder continuous of order $\alpha - \lfloor \alpha \rfloor$.

representation of the operator over the domain and range bases is necessary to ensure that functions in the domain and range space are represented in terms of the same d_j-dimensional orthonormal wavelet basis. For j with $d_j > 1$, either a tensor product wavelet basis or a multidimensional wavelet multiresolution analysis may be used in calculating the basis functions within the domain or range space, respectively: the space spanned by a finite representation is identical. In practice, the multidimensional MRA is preferred computationally. The moment condition is assumed to hold for the one-dimensional wavelets generating the tensor product or multiresolution basis.

The requirement that both wavelet and scaling function have compact support, α vanishing moments, and generate an orthonormal basis strongly restricts the choice of wavelet class. The use of Coiflets (Beylkin *et al.* , 1991) (or certain mild generalizations, as in Wei (1998), which also maintain these properties) is in fact required to achieve optimal rates via the procedure described. The purpose of this assumption is to ensure that the operator can be represented directly in terms of the discrete wavelet transform of its evaluations at a set of points, effecting a 'one-point quadrature' scheme for the calculation of the coefficients of the representation. For more general classes of wavelets, the use of the discrete wavelet transform of the evaluation points of a smooth function to substitute for the projection onto a wavelet basis results in an error which is of higher order than the error induced by restricting to a projection onto a finite basis.

Other classes of wavelets may be used if the projection is approximated by a multi-point quadrature scheme, as described in Beylkin *et al.* (1991) or Sweldens & Piessens (1994), at the cost of additional preprocessing before applying the discrete wavelet transform. If neither multipoint quadrature nor the use of Coiflets is acceptable, it is also possible to use interpolating wavelets, which do not form an orthogonal basis and result in a more complicated representation of $\pi^K(B_I, A_I)\pi^K$. General considerations regarding wavelet sampling are discussed in Mallat (2008). One case in which specialized classes of wavelets may be necessary is when the domain is not rectangular or is a subset of a non-Euclidean manifold, as may occur with geographic data restricted to an irregularly shaped geographic unit or on the surface of the Earth. In this case, a variety of alternative bases and sampling methods are available.

The procedure for constructing approximate projections $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ using the Coiflet basis is laid out in Algorithm 2. Under the above conditions, it can easily be shown that one obtains rapid convergence of the approximation algorithm:

Theorem 2. *Let (B,A) and $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ satisfy (1),(2), and (3). If $\bar{\alpha} = \min\limits_{r,i,j} \frac{2\alpha_{r,ij}}{d_i + d_j}$ and $\bar{d} = \max\limits_j 2d_j$, there exists $C > 0$ such that $\eta_K = O(J\max\limits_{r,i,j} (K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i+d_j)})$ and $\zeta_K = O(C^{\bar{d}} J\max\limits_{r,i,j} (K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i+d_j)})$. As a result, operator norm ϵ-approximations of h_x and g_x such that $\|h_K - h_x\|_{op} \le \epsilon$ and $\|g_K - g_x\|_{op} \le \epsilon$ can be calculated using a basis of $K = O(J(\frac{JC^{\bar{d}}}{\epsilon})^{\frac{1}{\bar{\alpha}}})$ functions in $O(J^{3+\frac{3}{\bar{\alpha}}} C^{\frac{3\bar{d}}{\bar{\alpha}}} \epsilon^{-\frac{3}{\bar{\alpha}}})$ operations.*

This result shows that an approximation algorithm with computational cost polynomial in $\frac{1}{\epsilon}$ is feasible for this class of models. The proof relies on applying Young's inequality (Johnstone, 2013, Theorem C.26) to bound the operator norm error in terms of the sup norm error in the kernel function, which for wavelet approximations can be bounded using the projection error bounds of Chen & Christensen (2015) and the quadrature error bounds of Beylkin *et al.* (1991). Due to the accurate quadrature properties of compactly supported wavelet multiresolution analyses, the error from projection and the error from quadrature are of the same order in K, up to constants. While a curse of dimensionality exists with respect to the number of variables entering as arguments of the functions used as state variables, this is inherent to the function class chosen, which permits a high degree of spatial irregularity as might be suitable for geostatistical applications. When the operators are instead highly smooth, as measured by the Hölder exponent of the integral kernels, the rate of convergence can be quite rapid.

Remark. The dependence on J, which in most applications has the interpretation of the number of independent functions which constitute the equilibrium objects (e.g., a value function, a distribution of individual states, and so on) and is usually a fixed feature of the model, will in general be conservative, as it is based on the worst case that all blocks of (B_C, A_C) contain an integral operator and that the difficulty of approximation of each operator, measured by $\frac{2\alpha_{r,ij}}{d_i+d_j}$, is roughly equal. If the row and column corresponding to subspace j for all but a subset S of subspaces do not contain an integral operator or contain only operators which are substantially smoother and so require fewer basis functions to approximate to ϵ accuracy, and only $K = O(S(\frac{JC^{\bar{d}}}{\epsilon})^{\frac{1}{\bar{\alpha}}})$ basis functions will be needed. This may be the case, for example, if one block contains an operator which is substantially harder to approximate than others (due to being higher-dimensional, less smooth, or both), in which case $S = 1$. In most applications, J is fixed and very small, though it could grow, for example, if some components are represented by a functional autoregressive model of high order.

Algorithm 2 Construction of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ using wavelet quadrature

---

Inputs: Block operators $(B, A) = (B_I, A_I) + (B_C, A_C)$ s.t. (B_C, A_C) is composed of integral operators $\int_{[0,1)^{d_j}} K_{r,ij}(x, y)[.]dy \; \forall i, j \in 1 \ldots J, r \in \{B, A\}$ satisfying Condition 3(i), $\{K_j\}_{j=1}^J$ number of evaluation points for each block
Output: $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ satisfying Condition 2

1. $[K_{r,ij}]_{s,t} \leftarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{K_i K_j}} K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t)$ for x_s, y_t on evenly spaced grids of size K_i, K_j over $[0,1)^{d_i}$, $[0,1)^{d_j}$ respectively, $\forall i, j, r$. Construct matrices to represent kernels of integral operators

2. $(\tilde{B}_C^K, \tilde{A}_C^K)_{r,ij} \leftarrow (\text{DWT}[(\text{DWT}[K_{r,ij}])^*])^* \; \forall i, j, r$ Construct approximate projection coefficients by discrete wavelet transform of rows then columns of $K_{r,ij}$, using Coiflet wavelets basis satisfying Condition 3(ii)

3. $(\tilde{B}_I^K, \tilde{A}_I^K) \leftarrow \pi^K (B_I, A_I) \pi^K$ Represent identity operators by $K_i \times K_j$ identity matrices

4. $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) \leftarrow (\tilde{B}_I^K, \tilde{A}_I^K) + (\tilde{B}_C^K, \tilde{A}_C^K)$ Add components

---

6 Application, continued: Implementation and Evaluation

The above procedures may be applied to construct a linearized solution to the model of trade, migration, and economic geography of Section 3.

6.1 Steady State and Linearization

As a testing ground for the algorithm, the geography model from Section 3 provides the unique advantage that it is possible to construct a particularly tractable special case, in which the geography is spatially homogeneous, in which the steady state and projections of derivatives can be computed exactly. In particular, set shocks $\nu_t(x)$ to 0 in all periods and conjecture that the initial distribution of population is uniform over a one dimensional periodic domain identifiable with a (possibly unbounded) interval in $\mathbb{R}$, in the sense that population measure over any interval is given by Lebesgue measure over the interval. Then it can be seen that a solution of the static equilibrium component of the model is given by $\omega_t(x)$ which is constant over x and t. Plugging this into the Bellman equation shows that, because $c(x' - x)$

is translation invariant, $V(x) = \bar{V}$ constant is the unique solution of the Bellman equation. Placing this in $p(x'|x, V)$, obtain that $p(x'|x, \bar{V}) \propto \exp(c(x' - x))$ and so is also translation invariant, and if $c(x' - x) = \log g(x' - x)$ for any nonnegative function $g(.)$, the transition equation for λ_t is given by a convolution with a density proportional to $g(.)$. For example, if $c(x' - x) = -\frac{1}{2c}(x' - x)^2$, quadratic adjustment costs, equation (3.2) is given by convolution with a Gaussian with standard deviation c, and if $c(x' - x) = -\frac{1}{c}|x' - x|$, equation (3.2) is given by convolution with a Laplace distribution with dispersion parameter c. Because convolution is spatially invariant, the unique steady state of this transition equation on a translation-invariant domain is the uniform distribution, thus verifying the initial conjecture. For convenience, note that in steady state the partition function $f(x, \bar{V})$ is a constant, $\bar{f}$.

Given the existence of a steady state, the dynamics of the model local to this point can be expressed by taking functional derivatives of the operators. First, the transition equation is linear with respect to λ with derivative given by a convolution of the argument with density proportional to $\exp(c(x' - x))$, an operator I denote as $P[.] := \int \frac{1}{\bar{f}} \exp(c(x' - x) + \beta\bar{V})[.]dx'$. This can be interpreted as convolution with a Gibbs distribution with potential given by the cost of moving: in the absence of disturbances to the value of a different locations, given a current population at each location, next period population spreads out by an amount proportional to the cost of distance. The Bellman equation is linear in V with derivative equal to the identity and has functional derivative with respect to V' given by $\frac{\beta}{\bar{f}} \int \exp(c(x' - x) + \beta\bar{V})[.]dx' = \beta P[.]$. The transition equation has derivative equal to the identity with respect to λ' and has derivative with respect to V given by $\beta \int_G \frac{1}{\bar{f}} \exp(c(x' - x) + \beta\bar{V})[.] - \frac{1}{\bar{f}} \exp(c(x' - x) + \beta\bar{V})\frac{\beta}{\bar{f}} \int \exp(c(z' - x) + \beta\bar{V})[.]dz'dx$, which equals $\beta P - \beta PP$. The transition equation for ν is linear in ν and ν', with derivative with respect to ν given by $\Gamma[.] := \int \Gamma(x, z)[.]dz$ and ν' by the identity. Finally, although no closed form expression exists for $\omega(x)$ in terms of $\lambda(x)$, its functional derivative $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ with respect to $\lambda(x)$, which is all that is needed, can be determined by implicit differentiation: the exact formula is derived in Appendix D.1.

Together these calculations fully characterize the derivatives of the model's equilibrium conditions with respect to the state variables. Arranging these derivatives into blocks with elements given by linear operators, the linearization of the equilibrium conditions of this model can be expressed in a form suitable for application of our solution methods, as a pair of linear operators representing the derivatives of the

equilibrium conditions of the model with respect to today's state variables (λ, ν, V) and tomorrow's state variables (λ', ν', V').

$$
\left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & I \\ P & 0 & \beta P - \beta PP \\ 0 & \Gamma & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \frac{d\omega}{d\lambda} & I & \beta P \\ I & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right) \tag{6.1}
$$

In this pair of operators, the columns correspond to function valued state variables, while the rows correspond to the linearized equations defining the equilibrium. In order, these are the Bellman equation, the transition law for the population distribution, and the law of motion for the function valued shock to the distribution of amenities. The representation in terms of compact and identity operators clearly demonstrates that the model is asymptotically diagonal, and under this parameterization, sufficient conditions on structural parameters may be derived[10] such that the model satisfies Condition (1), and so provides a suitable case for application of the method.

6.2 Approximation and Results

To evaluate the approximation algorithm, several numerical comparisons are performed for a translation invariant parameterization of this model using two separate choices of subspace for projection π^K. One choice is Coiflet wavelets, implemented via Algorithm (2). Another choice, particularly well suited to this model, is the Fourier basis of trigonometric polynomials. It is demonstrated in Appendix D.3 that in this case, not only can the projections be calculated exactly without additional quadrature approximation, the functional derivatives of the policy operators g_x and h_x are also available in semi-closed form for any bandlimited input function.[11] This generates a near-exact benchmark for the error in the operator approximated by wavelet quadrature, which I compute at different levels of K. Accuracy can be compared for impulse responses to function valued shocks, as well as for simulations.

---

[10]See Appendix D.3 for discussion.

[11]The argument relies on the fact that every integral operator in this model takes the form of a convolution, and so by the convolution theorem can be represented as a diagonal matrix with respect to the Fourier basis representation of each input function, resulting in a block diagonal representation which allows computation of the generalized Schur decomposition by a finite matrix operation at each frequency. Minor numerical error is introduced into the computation by numerical calculation of an integral term in the Fourier coefficients; see the complete model description in Appendix D.3 for full details.

To evaluate the approximation algorithm, several numerical comparisons are performed using both the Fourier and the wavelet representations of the model, at different levels of K, for an illustrative calibration of the model parameters described in Appendix D.4. Accuracy can be compared for impulse responses to function valued shocks, as well as for simulations. The Fourier and wavelet methods appear to exhibit a high degree of agreement, whether expressed in squared error norm over the grid points (a proxy for L^2 norm, controlled by the theory) or in maximum norm over grid points (not controlled by the theory). Error is largest for components and at parameter values at which the component of the Fourier coefficients which must be approximated numerically has substantial impact, suggesting that this quadrature error may be a non-negligible factor contributing to the discrepancy between wavelet and semi-closed form representations, but overall the discrepancy primarily measures the effect of the wavelet quadrature and projection as controlled by Theorem (2). For the Fourier representations, integer frequencies $\frac{-K}{2}$ to $\frac{K}{2}$ are used for each of $J = 3$ functions $\nu(x)$, $\lambda(x)$, and $V(x)$, giving $3 \times (K + 1)$ basis functions, for symmetry, while for wavelets K grid points are used to represent the scaling function coefficients for each function, with K given by a power of 2.

I evaluate the policy operator by constructing an impulse response to a smooth but spatially localized shock $\varepsilon(.)$ to the exogenously evolving component of the model $\nu(.)$, a scaled Gaussian spike centered at location 0.5, with functional form $\exp(50000(x - 0.5)^2)$. This may represent a nearly exactly localized improvement, as might occur in response to a local policy initiative or favorable productivity shock. As can be seen in Figure (6.1), the response of amenity value over time and space, calculated from $K = 1024$ using the Fourier representation spreads out rapidly from the initial location and diffuses from a local region to an eventually larger and larger area, in spite of a calibration of the exogenous spatial diffusion of amenities characterized by high persistence and the relatively small spatial diffusion. Note that while the space coordinate is represented on a line segment, the model is defined over a circle, so the edges are connected.

The population response, displayed in Figure (6.1), follows the amenity shock but is much more dispersed, and responds slowly, peaking over 10 periods later and then declining gradually. The population in regions far from the center declines, as people move towards the more desirable area, with a nadir over 20 periods later. Despite the slow speed of adjustment, movements begin the first period after the shock, as

Figure 6.1: Impulse Response of $\nu_t(x)$, $\lambda_t(x)$, & $V_t(x)$ to $\varepsilon_0(x) = \exp(50000(x-0.5)^2)$
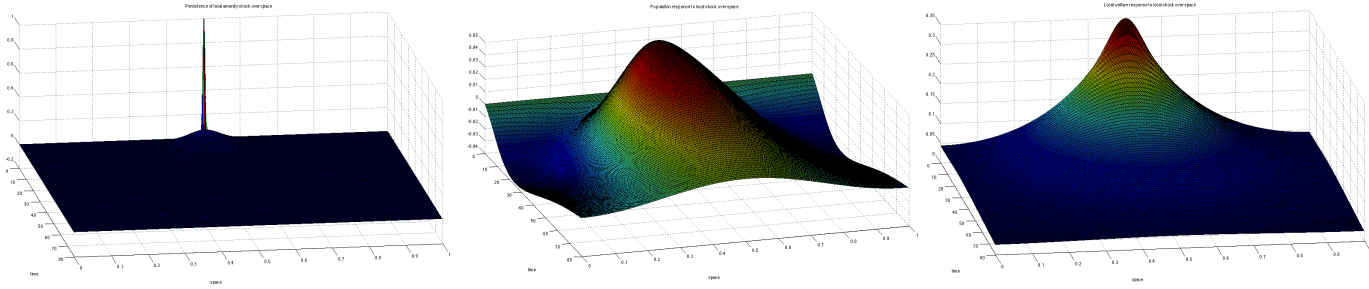
individuals anticipate the spread of the amenity over space and the possibility of moving in the future to more desirable areas, which are desirable in part because they provide the option value of moving even close to the center in the future at lower cost and so taking advantage of the improved amenity there. This is displayed clearly in the plot of welfare, $V_t(x)$ in Figure (6.1), which jumps immediately, with peak at the location of the shock but high values substantially more broadly dispersed, with a nontrivial jump in welfare over the entire domain, as even regions for which the value of the shock immediately and in the first few periods is essentially negligible face the prospect of higher welfare in the future as the amenity spreads out and population moves to regions positively affected by the shock.

Relative accuracy of the Fourier and wavelet representations of the model for the above shock are measured in Table (1), for $K = 256$, 512, and 1024, for the maximum error at any grid point over 80 periods of the impulse response.[12] Note that even for $K = 512$, the errors are already extremely small, with maximum pointwise error on the order of 10^{-7} or smaller for $\nu_t(x)$ a function with values ranging from 0 to 1, and 10^{-8} for $\lambda_t(x)$ and $V_t(x)$, functions with range of about 0.1. The order of this error decreases significantly for $K = 1024$, both for maximum and squared average error.

The clock time to compute the wavelet solutions, also displayed in Table (1), is relatively fast and increases roughly in cubic proportion to K, taking under two minutes for $K = 512$, including producing all figures and evaluation metrics, coded in Matlab using the default QZ function on a 2011 Macbook Pro with 2.8 GHz Intel i7 processor and 2 GB RAM. This level of speed and accuracy on a far from state of the art setup suggests that the procedure may be useful in applications where it is

---

[12]Additional figures in Appendix G present the Euclidean norm difference (over an evenly spaced grid) at each time point between the wavelet and Fourier representations at the different values of K, a proxy for the L^2 norm.

applied repeatedly, for example to estimate parameters. The Fourier representation takes only a few seconds for any K, which should be expected as it allows calculating solutions for each frequency separately and so takes time linear in K. This feature is only a result of the special structure of this model and is not likely to generalize.

To consider the behavior of the model in response to more complex patterns of input, I use it to produce simulated time paths. The shocks $\varepsilon_t(x)$ are drawn from a spatially correlated Gaussian process, a simulated fractional Brownian motion (started at 0) with Hurst parameter 0.7 and so a degree of Hölder regularity no greater than 0.7. Wavelet quadrature is easily capable of representing functions with this degree of regularity and so the simulations are drawn from the representation of the model with respect to a wavelet basis, with $K = 512$. Time paths are displayed in Figure (6.2).

One feature which stands out is the low degree of smoothness of $\nu_t(x)$, the persistent shock process, and $V_t(x)$, the welfare of residents at each location x, in contrast to the fairly high degree of smoothness of population movements $\lambda_t(x)$. This contrast is as should be expected, because $V_t(x)$ is a jump variable, and so adjusts immediately to reflect changes in the state, while population is a predetermined variable, and so changes only in response to expected future changes in welfare, which, because shocks to amenity value are expected to be smoothed out over time, substantially discounts the high frequency variations which impart roughness to the spatial distribution of current welfare. This is in line with standard reasoning for rational expectations decision problems: because moving is costly, transitory variation, expressed by the rough local movements in amenity values, has minimal effect on forward looking decisions. In contrast, low frequency changes, which are expected to be more persistent, do induce population movements, and the simulation does show periods of time where there are large population movements between regions. The simulation also exemplifies the expressive power of functional methods, as it allows description of the welfare and behavioral consequences of extremely finely detailed patterns of aggregate shocks, which would be difficult to express even with smooth nonparametric function representations, let alone low dimensional parametric approximations.

41

Table 1: Numerical IRF Discrepancy, Fourier vs. Wavelet Representations

K	max pointwise, ν_t	max pointwise, λ_t	max pointwise, V_t	Running Time (seconds)
256	0.0107	3.9549e-07	1.9362e-06	11.607549
512	3.4594e-07	5.0737e-08	7.6597e-08	96.187571
1024	8.9301e-11	1.2976e-08	1.9643e-08	376.833220

Figure 6.2: Simulated Geographic Equilibrium: Amenities, Welfare, and Population
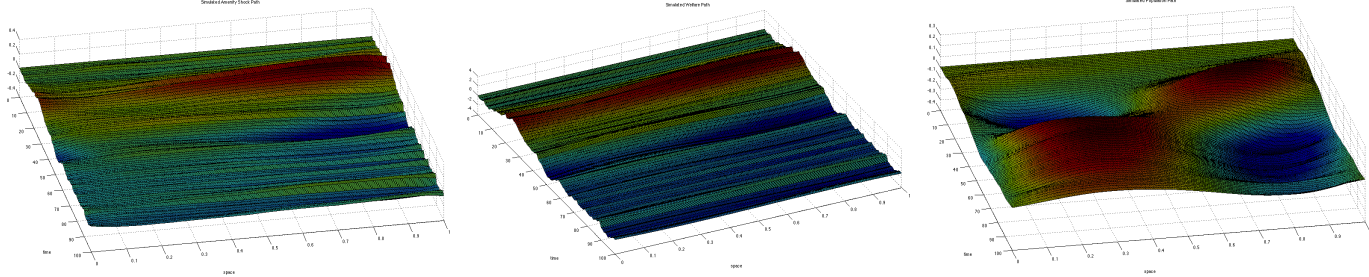
7   Conclusion

The idea that heterogeneity matters for economic outcomes, not only at the individual level but through the set of interdependencies linking behavior at the individual level to the environment faced by others, is a core principle in economics. Function valued stochastic processes, by describing how patterns of heterogeneity change over time and relate to other variables, provide an analytical framework in which these interdependencies can be modeled and evaluated directly rather than considering only aggregate variables. While describing economic decision making in these environments can be challenging due to the high dimension of the relevant variables, a substantial amount of information can be recovered by describing the problem locally near a point where infinite dimensional uncertainty disappears. A linearized solution allows consideration of responses to any possible pattern or shape that can be considered, accurately representing the behavior of the system in an infinite dimensional set of possible inputs. Moreover, for many systems, this response can be calculated quickly and accurately, uniformly over all possible directions by projection representations of the functional derivatives of the system.

   The dynamics of economic interactions over space, typically challenging to describe due to the fact that people in different locations must respond differently to the geographic patterns of economic activity induced by trade and spatially inhomogeneous regional disturbances, provide a demonstration of the rich patterns of

relationships that can be captured by allowing decisions and distributions to respond to the precise geographic pattern of shocks. Responses can differ substantially based on distance, but also based on expectations of perceived future spatial distributions. Although spatial interactions provide a case which illustrates the full importance of allowing for response to potentially arbitrarily shaped patterns of heterogeneity, the function valued approach seems promising for a wide variety of applications. These include understanding the mechanisms behind the dynamics of income and wealth inequality over business cycles, analyzing both through the relationship with capital markets, as has been explored in existing studies of incomplete markets models with aggregate shocks, as well as other potential economic mechanisms and policies. They may also be useful for studying a variety of patterns of interaction which depend on the entire shape of the distribution of heterogeneity, such as matching markets in labor or other contexts or interactions through a social or economic network.

While for some applications, existing methods may be used to characterize the dynamics of economic heterogeneity, albeit without explicit guarantees of accuracy, the function valued approach may still be desirable as a framework for data analysis. By explicitly allowing the model to incorporate uncertainty of arbitrary shape, the models described allow a complete characterization of the variation in micro and macroeconomic data and open the possibility of comparing the model directly to cross-sectional micro data. Because linearized function valued models generate dynamics consistent with functional linear processes, estimation and inference methods from functional data analysis may be applied to evaluate them empirically. Given the speed and accuracy of the solution methods, they may also open up the possibility of using functional data methods to perform full information structural estimation of models with heterogeneous agents.

Appendices to "Function Valued States"

The following supplemental appendix collects additional results and proofs of propositions in the main text. Appendix A demonstrates the existence and of the generalized Schur decomposition for infinite dimensional operator pairs and Appendix B provides perturbation bounds demonstrating continuity with respect to approximations of those operators. Appendix C provides supplemental results giving conditions and strategies for ensuring differentiability and asymptotic diagonality of models so

that the procedures in the main text may be applied and demonstrates additional properties including measurability and uniqueness of solutions. Appendix D provides analytical results for the economic geography example including derivatives, steady state, and exact characterization of solutions. Appendix E provides illustrative sufficient conditions ensuring the existence of differentiable recursive solutions in nonlinear dynamic stochastic economies with function valued states, generalizing the results of Jin & Judd (2002) to the Hilbert space setting. Appendix F collects all proofs and Appendix G collects additional figures.

Notation

$\mathcal{H}$, with any subscript, is assumed to be a complete separable Hilbert space. $\mathcal{B}$, with any subscript, is Banach space. The notation $\| \ \|$ is overloaded: if the object a is an element of $\mathcal{B}$, $\|a\|$ is the norm of a in $\mathcal{B}$, and if a is in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$, $\|a\| = \langle a, a \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$ is the norm of a in $\mathcal{H}$, where $\langle \ , \ \rangle$ is the associated inner product. If $a \in \mathcal{H}_a$ but it is not clear from context the space on which a lives, the norm may be denoted $\|a\|_{\mathcal{H}_a}$. $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$ is the space of bounded linear operators from $\mathcal{H}_a$ to $\mathcal{H}_b$, equipped with the operator norm: for $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, $\|A\| = \sup_{\|x\|_{\mathcal{H}_a}=1} \|Ax\|_{\mathcal{H}_b}$. If clarification is required, this norm may be denoted $\|A\|_{op}$. A^* denotes the (Hermitian) adjoint of A: $\forall x \in \mathcal{H}_a, y \in \mathcal{H}_b, \langle Ax, y \rangle = \langle x, A^*y \rangle$. A sequence of operators $A_i \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, $i \in \mathbb{N}$ is said to converge in operator norm topology, or 'in norm' to A if $\|A_i - A\| \to 0$. For Γ a Cauchy contour in the extended complex plane $\mathbb{C}_\infty$ (see Conway (1978, Ch. 1 S. 6)) and $f(\lambda) : \mathbb{C}_\infty \to \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$ a function from one complex variable to a linear operator, $\int_\Gamma f(\lambda)d\lambda$ is the path integral of $f(\lambda)$ over the curve Γ, as defined in Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Ch. I). I is the identity operator: if the space $\mathcal{B}_a$ on which it acts needs to be specified, it is written $I_{\mathcal{B}_a}$. For $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, $\text{Im}(A)$ is the image of A and $\text{Ker}(A)$ is the kernel of A. For a pair of bounded operators (B, A) each in $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_a \to \mathcal{H}_b)$, following Gohberg *et al.* (1990), define the spectrum $\sigma(B, A)$ as those $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\lambda A - B$ is not invertible, accompanied by the point ∞ if and only if A does not have bounded inverse, and the resolvent set $\rho(B, A)$ as $\mathbb{C}_\infty \backslash \sigma(B, A)$. An operator pair is said to be Γ-regular if for some nonempty subset $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{C}_\infty$, $\Gamma \subset \rho(B, A)$. Brackets $A[h]$ may optionally be used to denote that h is an argument of linear operator A, parentheses $A(h)$ generally denote that h is an argument of (possibly) nonlinear operator A. For nonlinear functions and operators,

$F(a, b)$, F_a and F_b are the partial derivatives with respect to arguments a and b respectively. For a variable x, which may be a function, x' denotes the variable in the next time period, not the derivative. The Fourier transform of a function $f(x)$ is denoted with the scale convention $\hat{f}(\omega) := \mathcal{F}[\mathrm{f(x)}](\omega) := \int \exp(-2\pi\iota\omega x)f(x)dx$.

A Existence and properties of a generalized Schur decomposition for pairs of bounded operators

A.1 Existence

The construction of a solution for the linear expectational difference equation defined by a linear or linearized rational expectations model in finite dimensions relies on the ability to partition the state space and the equilibrium equations into 'stable' and 'unstable' components which may be treated separately. This is generally achieved by either a Jordan decomposition, generating block-diagonal matrices, as in Blanchard & Kahn (1980) or by a generalized Schur decomposition, generating upper-triangular matrices,[13] as in Klein (2000). In practice, the latter has become preferred, as the Jordan decomposition of a matrix is not in general continuous while the generalized Schur decomposition, which is generated by unitary matrices, exhibits numerical stability in theory and practice. Such stability is particularly desirable in the infinite dimensional case, as closed form solutions for the eigenfunctions are not in general feasible and finite dimensional numerical procedures must by necessity induce some error into the representation of the operator pair of interest.

While generalization of the Jordan decomposition to infinite dimensional operator pairs is well established (Kato, 1976; Gohberg *et al.*, 1990, Ch IV) and the Schur decomposition for a single infinite dimensional operator has also been defined (Gohberg *et al.*, 1990, Ch II.3), an analogue of the generalized Schur decomposition for pairs of infinite dimensional linear operators has not, to the best of my knowledge, been described. As in the case of the Schur decomposition of a single operator, extension to the infinite dimensional case is slightly delicate, as the existence of the Schur or generalized Schur decomposition is based on an iterative construction which extends only in certain cases to an uncountable state space. In particular, the Schur decompo-

---

[13]This decomposition is often referred to as the QZ decomposition, in reference to the QZ algorithm often used to compute it. See Golub & Van Loan (1996).

sition may be extended to compact operators but not to arbitrary bounded or closed operators, for which a Jordan decomposition exists but a Schur decomposition may not. For the purposes of constructing an analogy of the generalized Schur decomposition which permits extension of rational expectation solution procedures, there are at least two ways around this difficulty. The first, and simplest, is to note that while solution requires splitting the domain into 'forward' and 'backward' subspaces, for a stationary solution there is no requirement that the restriction of the operator to these subspaces itself take upper triangular form. Instead, one can construct a block upper triangular decomposition which preserves the desirable feature of being generated by unitary transformation while eschewing the necessity to make restrictive compactness assumptions. Alternately, one may construct a generalized Schur decomposition analogously to the infinite dimensional Schur decomposition, which does preserve an upper-triangular structure within blocks, under a modified and so slightly less onerous compactness condition than in the single operator case. In the following, I show existence of a blockwise decomposition under general conditions, and also decomposition which is upper triangular within blocks under a condition on compactness of certain transformations of the operator pair which does not imply that both operators are compact, and in particular allows the pertinent example of the standard eigenvalue problem in which one of the operators in the pair is the identity operator, which is not compact on an infinite dimensional space. This construction also has the advantage that it implies compactness of certain Schur components and so generates a solution for the law of motion which is itself compact.

Formally, let (M, G) be a pair of bounded linear operators acting between complex Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_X$ and $\mathcal{H}_Y$, i.e. $M \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_Y)$ $G \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_Y)$. Following Gohberg *et al.* (1990), define the spectrum $\sigma(M, G)$ as those $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\lambda G - M$ is not invertible, accompanied by the point ∞ if and only if G does not have bounded inverse, and the resolvent set $\rho(M, G)$ as $\mathbb{C}_\infty \backslash \sigma(M, G)$, where $\mathbb{C}_\infty$ is the extended complex plane with the standard topology (see Conway (1978, Ch. 1 S. 6)).

Definition 4. An operator pair is said to be Γ-regular (with respect to a set Γ) if for some nonempty subset $\Gamma \subset \mathbb{C}_\infty$, $\Gamma \subset \rho(M, G)$.

Assume Γ is a Cauchy contour (c.f. Gohberg *et al.* (1990, p.6)) with inner domain Δ_+ and outer domain Δ_-, and that (M, G) is Γ-regular. For concreteness, we will often take Γ to be the positively oriented complex unit circle, in which case

Γ-regularity means that the spectrum does not contain λ such that $|\lambda| = 1$. From a modeling perspective, this ensures stationarity by ruling out unit roots; this particular choice is not required to ensure existence of a generalized Schur decomposition. By Gohberg *et al.* (1990) Theorem IV.1.1, the above assumptions ensure the existence of (possibly oblique) projection operators $\pi_1 \colon \mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_X$ and $\pi_2 \colon \mathcal{H}_Y \to \mathcal{H}_Y$ which partition $\mathcal{H}_X$ and $\mathcal{H}_Y$ into $\operatorname{Im} \pi_1 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_1$ and $\operatorname{Im} \pi_2 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_2$ respectively, and the operator pair (M, G) into components

$$(M, G) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} M_1 & 0 \\ 0 & M_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} G_1 & 0 \\ 0 & G_2 \end{bmatrix} \right) \colon \ \operatorname{Im} \pi_1 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_1 \to \operatorname{Im} \pi_2 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_2 \quad (A.1)$$

such that (M_1, G_1) and (M_2, G_2) are Γ-regular, $\sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$ and $\sigma(M_2, G_2) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$. In words, this says one can separate the pair into a component with spectrum inside some domain and a component with spectrum outside.

Assume in addition that $0 \in \Delta_+$ and $\infty \in \Delta_-$. By the above result and the definition of the resolvent, this implies that G_1 and M_2 are invertible on their respective domains. In particular, $E = \begin{pmatrix} G_1^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & M_2^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \colon \operatorname{Im} \pi_2 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_2 \to \operatorname{Im} \pi_1 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_1$ is a bounded invertible operator and we may define the partition

$$(EM, EG) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} \Omega_1 & 0 \\ 0 & I_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \Omega_2 \end{bmatrix} \right) \colon \ \operatorname{Im} \pi_1 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_1 \to \operatorname{Im} \pi_1 \oplus \operatorname{Ker} \pi_1 \quad (A.2)$$

where $\Omega_1 = G_1^{-1} M_1$ and $\Omega_2 = M_2^{-1} G_2$. These operators have the following relationship with (M_1, G_1) and (M_2, G_2):

Lemma 1. $\sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(\Omega_1)$, and $\frac{1}{\lambda} \in \sigma(\Omega_2)$ if and only if $\lambda \in \sigma(M_2, G_2)$ (where $\frac{1}{\infty}$ may be defined to equal 0)

Proof. Suppose λ is in the resolvent set of Ω_1. Then $\Omega_1 - \lambda I_1$ has some bounded inverse Z. Then $-ZG_1^{-1}$ satisfies $-ZG_1^{-1}(\lambda G_1 - M_1) = Z(\Omega_1 - \lambda I_1) = I_1$ and $-(\lambda G_1 - M_1)ZG_1^{-1} = -G_1 G_1^{-1}(\lambda G_1 - M_1)ZG_1^{-1} = G_1(\Omega - \lambda I_1)ZG_1^{-1} = G_1 G_1^{-1} = I_1$, so $\lambda \in \rho(M_1, G_1)$. That is, $\rho(\Omega_1) \subset \rho(M_1, G_1)$. Next, suppose $\lambda \in \rho(M_1, G_1)$. Then $\lambda G_1 - M_1$ has a bounded inverse Z, and $-ZG_1$ satisfies $-ZG_1(\Omega - \lambda I_1) = Z(\lambda G_1 - M_1) = I_1$ and $-(\Omega - \lambda I_1)ZG_1 = -G_1^{-1}G_1(\Omega - \lambda I_1)ZG_1 = G_1^{-1}(\lambda G_1 - M_1)ZG_1 = G_1^{-1}G_1 = I_1$, and so $\rho(M_1, G_1) \subset \rho(\Omega_1)$. Combining, $\rho(M_1, G_1) = \rho(\Omega_1)$ and so

$\sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(\Omega_1)$. Similar calculations show $\frac{1}{\lambda} \in \sigma(\Omega_2)$ if and only if $\lambda \in \sigma(M_2, G_2)$. If $\infty \in \sigma(M_2, G_2)$, G_2 is not invertible and so $M_2^{-1}G_2 - \frac{1}{\infty}I_2 = M_2^{-1}G_2$ must also have nontrivial kernel, and so be noninvertible. □

With this notation, it is possible to characterize conditions under which the operator pair (M, G) has a generalized Schur decomposition. As our construction makes use of complete orthonormal bases, we assume now that (M, G) are operators between *separable* Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_X$ and $\mathcal{H}_Y$.

Lemma 2. *Let (M, G) be a pair of bounded operators $M \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_Y)$ $G \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_Y)$ Γ-regular with respect to a Cauchy curve with inner domain Δ_+ such that $0 \in \Delta_+$ and outer domain Δ_- such that $\infty \in \Delta_-$. Define projectors π_1 and π_2 as in A.1 with respect to Γ. Then, there exist unitary operators $Q = [Q^1, Q^2]$: $Im\pi_2 \oplus \mathcal{H}_Y/Im\pi_2 \to F_1 \oplus F_2$ and $U = [U^1, U^2]$: $Im\pi_1 \oplus \mathcal{H}_X/Im\pi_1 \to E_1 \oplus E_2$ such that (M, G) has the following block-wise generalized Schur decomposition*

$$
(QMU^*, QGU^*) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{12} \\ 0 & M_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} G_{11} & G_{12} \\ 0 & G_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right)
$$

from $E_1 \oplus E_2 \to F_1 \oplus F_2$

where E_1, E_2, F_1, and F_2 are spaces such that there exist linear isometric isomorphisms from $Im\pi_1 \to E_1$, $\mathcal{H}_X/Im\pi_1 \to E_2$, $Im\pi_2 \to F_1$, and $\mathcal{H}_X/Im\pi_2 \to F_2$, respectively. Further, $\sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) = \sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$ and $\sigma(M_{22}, G_{22}) = \sigma(M_2, G_2) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$.

Remark. The precise identity of the spaces E_1, E_2, F_1, and F_2 need not be considered for this result. However, a canonical choice of spaces would be to allow $E_1 = Im\pi_1$, $E_2 = \mathcal{H}_X/Im\pi_1$, $F_1 = Im\pi_2$, $F_2 = \mathcal{H}_Y/Im\pi_2$, in which case the Schur decomposition acts on the same space as (M, G).

Proof. See Appendix F. □

A.2   Compactness and Triangular Decompositions

Slightly stronger assumptions than used in the above can yield stronger results. In particular, the assumption of compactness of Ω_1 and Ω_2 may permit the block trian-

gular decomposition to be extended to a triangular decomposition within each block, as in the infinite dimensional Schur decomposition in Gohberg *et al.* (1990). This provides a link to the finite dimensional method, but is nowhere necessary for the application of the decomposition considered. However, compactness of the components does provide a useful sufficient condition for the necessary conditions, and also ensures the compactness of the solution operators, which is a condition commonly imposed for the validity of estimators of infinite dimensional operators: see, e.g., Bosq (2000).

If this refinement is not needed, we may instead operate under a strictly weaker assumption: viz. that the spectrum of (M, G) is bounded away from Γ. To see that this is weaker, note that compactness implies that the unique accumulation point of the spectrum is at 0, and so by 1, the spectra of Ω_1 and Ω_2 and, as a result, of (M, G) must neither be inside of Γ or have limit point in Γ. Formally, we define a block triangular decomposition as follows. For notational convenience and analogy to the finite dimensional case, we take the decomposition to be defined as a pair on $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_Y)$ rather than over isometrically isomorphic spaces.

Lemma 3. *Let* (M, G) *be a pair of bounded operators* $M \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_Y)$ $G \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_X \to \mathcal{H}_Y)$ Γ-*regular with respect to a Cauchy curve with inner domain* Δ_+ *such that* $0 \in \Delta_+$ *and outer domain* Δ_- *such that* $\infty \in \Delta_-$. *Define projectors* π_1 *and* π_2 *as in A.1 with respect to* Γ *and* Ω_1 *and* Ω_2 *as in A.2. Suppose in addition that* Ω_1 *and* Ω_2 *are compact operators. Then, there exist unitary operators* $Q = [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}, Q^2, Q^{2\perp}]:$ $F_1 \oplus F_1^\perp \oplus F_2 \oplus F_2^\perp \to F_1 \oplus F_1^\perp \oplus F_2 \oplus F_2^\perp$ *and* $P = [P^1, P^{1\perp}, P^2, P^{2\perp}]:$ $E_1 \oplus E_1^\perp \oplus E_2 \oplus E_2^\perp \to E_1 \oplus E_1^\perp \oplus E_2 \oplus E_2^\perp$ *such that* (M, G) *has the following (generalized Schur) decomposition*

$$
(M, G) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{11}^{off} & M_{12} & . \\ 0 & M_{11}^\perp & . & . \\ 0 & 0 & M_{22} & M_{22}^{off} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & M_{22}^\perp \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} G_{11} & G_{11}^{off} & G_{12} & . \\ 0 & G_{11}^\perp & . & . \\ 0 & 0 & G_{22} & G_{22}^{off} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & G_{22}^\perp \end{bmatrix} \right)
$$

from $E_1 \oplus E_1^\perp \oplus E_2 \oplus E_2^\perp \to F_1 \oplus F_1^\perp \oplus F_2 \oplus F_2^\perp$

where $E_1, E_1^\perp, E_2, E_2^\perp$ *and* $F_1, F_1^\perp, F_2, F_2^\perp$ *are closed linear subspaces of* $\mathcal{H}_X$ *and* $\mathcal{H}_Y$, *respectively. Further, with respect to the orthonormal bases* $\{\tilde{p}_i^1\}_{i=1}^\infty$ *of* E_1 *and* $\{\tilde{q}_i^1\}_{i=1}^\infty$ *of* F_1 *generating the rows of* P^1 *and* Q^1, *respectively,* (M_{11}, G_{11}) *are upper triangular*

with $(M_{11})_{jj}/(G_{11})_{jj} = \lambda_j$ where λ_j is the jth nonzero generalized eigenvalue (in some arbitrary fixed order) repeated a number of times equal to its multiplicity in $\sigma(M_1, G_1)$, and similarly with respect to the orthonormal bases $\{\tilde{p}_i^2\}_{i=1}^\infty$ of E_2 and $\{\tilde{q}_i^2\}_{i=1}^\infty$ of F_2 generating the rows of P^2 and Q^2, respectively, (M_{22}, G_{22}) are upper triangular with $(M_{22})_{jj}/(G_{22})_{jj} = \lambda_j$ where λ_j is the jth finite generalized eigenvalue repeated a number of times equal to its multiplicity in $\sigma(M_2, G_2)$. In addition, $\sigma(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp) \subset \{0\}$ and $\sigma(M_{22}^\perp, G_{22}^\perp) \subset \{\infty\}$.

Remark. $(G_{11}^\perp)^{-1} M_{11}^\perp$ and $(M_{22}^\perp)^{-1} G_{22}^\perp$ are examples of Volterra operators, as they are compact and quasinilpotent (with spectrum equal to zero only). As a result, they may be shown to be unitarily equivalent to a particular continuous analogue of an upper-triangular operator with respect to a (not necessarily countable) increasing chain of projections on subspaces of $\mathcal{H}_X$ (Gohberg *et al.* , 1993, Thm. XXI.1.5). In principle, a fully triangular representation of (M, G) in which $(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp)$ and $(M_{22}^\perp, G_{22}^\perp)$ are also upper-triangular with respect to some chain of subspaces could be generated via an analogue for operator pairs of Gohberg *et al.* (1993, Thm. XXI.1.2). Such a decomposition is unnecessary for our purposes, as block-triangular structure is sufficient for representing a solution of the equilibrium conditions and the approximation techniques to be used do not take advantage of the continuous structure provided by the more intricate decomposition.

Proof. See Appendix F. □

B Perturbation Theory for the Generalized Schur Decomposition

Perturbation for generalized Schur subspaces associated with a subset of the spectrum is covered in Stewart (1973) for perturbations measured in Frobenius norm. In this section, I extend the results to perturbation in operator norm. In addition to bounds on the error in terms of the subspace angle between the approximate and true deflating subspaces, this section will also consider approximation of the Rayleigh components of the operator pair corresponding to these subspaces. First, set up the generalized Schur subspace approximation problem exactly as in Stewart (1973).

Let $(A, B) \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2, \mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2)$ and unitary operators $X = (X_1, X_2)$ $\mathcal{H}_1 \to$

$\mathcal{H}_1$ and $Y = (Y_1, Y_2)$ $\mathcal{H}_2 \to \mathcal{H}_2$ decompose (A, B) as

$$(Y^*AX, Y^*BX) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

To find a perturbation bound, we search for the minimal rotations

$$U_X = \begin{pmatrix} I & -P^* \\ P & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (I + P^*P)^{-1/2} & 0 \\ 0 & (I + PP^*)^{-1/2} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$U_Y = \begin{pmatrix} I & -Q^* \\ Q & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (I + Q^*Q)^{-1/2} & 0 \\ 0 & (I + QQ^*)^{-1/2} \end{pmatrix}$$

such that $X' = (X'_1, X'_2) = X U_X$ and $Y' = (Y'_1, Y'_2) = Y U_Y$ generate subspaces $\mathcal{R}(X'_1) = \mathcal{X} \subset \mathcal{H}_1$ and $\mathcal{R}(Y'_1) = \mathcal{Y} \subset \mathcal{H}_2$ which form a deflating pair of (A, B). A pair of subspaces $\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}$ form a deflating pair if and only if the transformed pair is block upper triangular with respect to these subspaces, i.e. $(Y'^*_2 AX'_1, Y'^*_2 BX'_1) = (0, 0)$. This is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} QA_{11} - A_{22}P &= A_{21} - QA_{12}P \\ QB_{11} - B_{22}P &= B_{21} - QB_{12}P \end{aligned} \tag{B.1}$$

In order to find (Q, P) which satisfy the above condition and are small relative to perturbations in operator norm, define a norm over the space of operator pairs over subspaces conformable to the pair (Q, P) as the largest operator norm of an operator in the pair, i.e.

$$\|(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}} = \max(\|Q\|, \|P\|)$$

If we can show that the conditions of Stewart (1973) Theorem 3.1 are satisfied for (B.1) using this norm, then this theorem will provide a bound on the operator norm of the rotation needed to generate such a decomposition. Define

$$T(Q, P) = \left(\begin{array}{cc} QA_{11} - A_{22}P & QB_{11} - B_{22}P \end{array} \right)$$

$$g = \left(\begin{array}{cc} A_{21} & B_{21} \end{array} \right)$$

$$\varphi(Q, P) = (\ QA_{12}P \quad QB_{12}P\ )$$

To show a quadratic bound for $\varphi(Q, P)$, begin with the first term:

$$\begin{aligned}\|\varphi_1(Q, P)\| &\leq \|Q\|\,\|P\|\,\|A_{12}\| \\ &\leq \|(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}}^2\,\|A_{12}\|\end{aligned}$$

Combining with identical calculations for the second term yields quadratic bound

$$\|\varphi(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}} \leq \eta\|(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}}^2 \tag{B.2}$$

where

$$\eta = \|(A_{12}, B_{12})\|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

To demonstrate the Lipschitz property for this operator, again note

$$\begin{aligned}\|\varphi_1(Q, P) - \varphi_1(\tilde{Q}, \tilde{P})\| &\leq \left\|Q - \tilde{Q}\right\|\|P\|\,\|A_{12}\| + \left\|\tilde{Q}\right\|\left\|P - \tilde{P}\right\|\|A_{12}\| \\ &\leq 2\max(\|(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}}, \|(\tilde{Q}, \tilde{P})\|_{\mathcal{B}})\|(Q - \tilde{Q}, P - \tilde{P})\|_{\mathcal{B}}\,\|A_{12}\|\end{aligned}$$

Combining with identical calculations for the second term gives Lipschitz condition

$$\|\varphi(Q, P) - \varphi(\tilde{Q}, \tilde{P})\|_B \leq 2\eta\max(\|(Q, P)\|_{\mathcal{B}}, \|(\tilde{Q}, \tilde{P})\|_{\mathcal{B}})\|(Q - \tilde{Q}, P - \tilde{P})\|_{\mathcal{B}} \tag{B.3}$$

These demonstrate that conditions (i) and (ii) of Theorem 3.1 in Stewart (1973) continue to hold for the norm $\|.\|_{\mathcal{B}}$

Again defining

$$\gamma = \|g\|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

$$\delta = \|T^{-1}\|_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}$$

one obtains

Lemma 4. *Suppose $T(Q, P) = g - \varphi(Q, P)$ with T, g, and φ defined as above, where φ satisfies the quadratic bound and Lipschitz conditions. Let $\delta > 0$ and $\gamma\eta/\delta^2 < 1/4$.*

Then

$$\left\| \begin{pmatrix} Q, & P \end{pmatrix} \right\|_{\mathcal{B}} < 2\frac{\gamma}{\delta}$$

To determine precisely how the above theorem imposes bounds on errors in Schur subspaces, it is necessary to examine the stability properties of the term δ. Define

$$\text{dif}(A, B) = \text{dif}(\begin{matrix} A_{11} & B_{11} \\ A_{22} & B_{22} \end{matrix}) = \|T^{-1}\|_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1} \tag{B.4}$$

Note that this operator depends on only the block diagonal terms of the pair (A, B). Define the perturbation $(E, F) \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2, \mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2)$ and define a partition of the operator conformable with that of (A, B) by $(E_{ij}, F_{ij}) = (Y_i^H E X_j, Y_i^H F X_j)$. We would like to define a bound on the term

$$\text{dif}(A + E, B + F) = \text{dif}(\begin{matrix} A_{11} + E_{11} & B_{11} + F_{11} \\ A_{22} + F_{22} & B_{22} + F_{22} \end{matrix})$$

Using the alternate characterization $\text{dif}(A, B) = \underset{\|Z\|_{\mathcal{B}}=1}{inf} \|T(Z)\|_{\mathcal{B}}$ where $Z \in \mathcal{B}$, one can derive lower and upper bounds

$$\text{dif}(A, B) + \nu(E, F) \geq \text{dif}(A + E, B + F) \geq \text{dif}(A, B) - \nu(E, F)$$

where

$$\nu(E, F) = \max(\|E_{11}\| + \|E_{22}\|, \|F_{11}\| + \|F_{22}\|)$$

Combing this bound with the previous lemma, obtain

Theorem 3. *Let (A, B) and $(E, F) \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2, \mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2)$ and $X = (X_1, X_2)$ $\mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_1$ and $Y = (Y_1, Y_2)$ $\mathcal{H}_2 \to \mathcal{H}_2$ be unitary operators such that $\mathscr{R}(X_1)$ and $\mathscr{R}(Y_1)$ form a deflating pair of subspaces for the operator pair (A, B). Suppose these operators partition the pairs such that*

$$(Y^H A X, Y^H B X) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ 0 & B_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

$$(Y^H E X, Y^H F X) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} E_{11} & E_{12} \\ E_{21} & E_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} F_{11} & F_{12} \\ F_{21} & F_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

Define

$$\delta = dif(A, B) - \nu(E, F)$$

along with

$$\gamma = \|(\; E_{21} \quad F_{21}) \; \|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

and

$$\eta = \|(A_{12} + E_{12}, B_{12} + F_{12})\|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

Suppose $\delta > 0$ and $\gamma\eta/\delta^2 < 1/4$. Then

Then there is a pair of operators (Q, P) with

$$\left\| \left(\; Q, \quad P \; \right) \right\|_{\mathcal{B}} \leq \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$$

such that

$X_1' = (X_1 + X_2 P)(I + P^* P)^{-1/2}$
$Y_1' = (Y_1 + Y_2 Q)(I + Q^* Q)^{-1/2}$
and $\mathscr{R}(X_1')$ and $\mathscr{R}(Y_1')$ form a pair of deflating subspaces for $(A + E, B + F)$.

This is essentially identical to Theorem 5.7 of Stewart (1973) aside from the definition of the norms via which the terms are defined and the resulting difference in the lower bound on δ.

Via Theorem 2.7 in Stewart (1973), we know that

$$\| \sin \Theta(\mathscr{R}(X_1), \mathscr{R}(X_1')) \| \leq \| \tan \Theta(\mathscr{R}(X_1), \mathscr{R}(X_1')) \| = \|P\|$$

$$\| \sin \Theta(\mathscr{R}(Y_1), \mathscr{R}(Y_1')) \| \leq \| \tan \Theta(\mathscr{R}(Y_1), \mathscr{R}(Y_1')) \| = \|Q\|$$

both of which are less than $\left\| \left(\; Q, \quad P \; \right) \right\|_{\mathcal{B}}$. As a result, we have the following corollary

Corollary 1. *Suppose (A, B), (E, F), X and Y satisfy the conditions of the theorem above. Then the operator pair $(A + E, B + F)$ has a right generalized Schur subspace $\mathscr{R}(X_1')$ such that $\|Proj_{X_1'} - Proj_{X_1}\|_2 \leq \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$ and associated left generalized Schur subspace $\mathscr{R}(Y_1')$ such that $\|Proj_{Y_1'} - Proj_{Y_1}\|_2 \leq \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$*

As a result, for appropriately small approximation error in the operator pair of interest, a fixed, well-separated, primary generalized Schur subspace (and associated generalized Schur functions or vectors whose range spans it) of the perturbed pair

differs by an amount which is on the order of the operator norm of the perturbation from the corresponding true subspace (and associated functions). This dependence on the order of the operator norm of the error may be particularly useful in the case of large or infinite dimensional subspaces, for which the Frobenius norm of the error may increase as the square root of the dimension of the subspace. One loses, however, the set of sharp characterizations of the difference term δ in terms of spectral properties of the operator to be approximated which may be obtained when it is defined via the Frobenius norm. This seems necessary in general, however, as the Frobenius or Hilbert-Schmidt norm may fail to be finite in the infinite dimensional case for otherwise well-behaved operators.

To bound the approximation error in the components (A_{11}, B_{11}) induced by an approximation, it is helpful to introduce an additional pair of subspaces to correspond to the right deflating pair $\mathscr{R}(X_1)$ and $\mathscr{R}(Y_1)$. Defining (X_1, X_2) and (Y_1, Y_2) as above so $\mathscr{R}(X_1)$ and $\mathscr{R}(Y_1)$ form a deflating pair, we look for operators V_1 and U_2 and R and S with $V_1 = Y_1 + Y_2 R^*$ and $U_2 = X_2 - X_1 S$ to solve

$$(V_1, Y_2)^* A(X_1, U_2) = \begin{pmatrix} I & R \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I & -S \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(V_1, Y_2)^* B(X_1, U_2) = \begin{pmatrix} I & R \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ 0 & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I & -S \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{(B.5)}$$

This holds if there exist S, R such that

$$A_{11}S - RA_{22} = A_{12}$$
$$B_{11}S - RB_{22} = B_{12}$$

Theorem 5.9 in Stewart (1973) notes that if the operator T is nonsingular, there exist S and R which solve this equation, and so (X_1, U_2) and (V_1, Y_2), which are not in general unitary, though are nonsingular, block diagonalize (A, B). Further, by the definitions of V_1 and U_2, one has $\|V_1\| = \|\sec \Theta(\mathscr{R}(V_1), \mathscr{R}(Y_1))\| = \|\sec \Theta_1\|$ and $\|U_2\| = \|\sec \Theta(\mathscr{R}(U_2), \mathscr{R}(X_2))\| = \|\sec \Theta_2\|$.

This block diagonalization can be used along with the perturbation formula to construct bounds on the approximation error in (A_{11}, B_{11}). Consider a perturbation

(E, F) of (A, B) and define

$$((V_1, Y_2)^* E(X_1, U_2), (V_1, Y_2)^* F(X_1, U_2)) = \left(\left(\begin{array}{cc} E_{11} & E_{12} \\ E_{21} & E_{22} \end{array} \right), \left(\begin{array}{cc} F_{11} & F_{12} \\ F_{21} & F_{22} \end{array} \right) \right)$$

so that perturbed operator pair satisfies

$$((V_1, Y_2)^* (A + E)(X_1, U_2), (V_1, Y_2)^* (B + F)(X_1, U_2)) =$$
$$\left(\left(\begin{array}{cc} A_{11} + E_{11} & E_{12} \\ E_{21} & A_{22} + E_{22} \end{array} \right), \left(\begin{array}{cc} B_{11} + F_{11} & F_{12} \\ F_{21} & B_{22} + F_{22} \end{array} \right) \right) \quad \text{(B.6)}$$

then, following Stewart & Sun (1990) VI.2.15, we have

Theorem 4. *Define*

$$\delta = \mathit{dif}(A, B) - \max(\|E_{11}\| + \|E_{22}\|, \|F_{11}\| + \|F_{22}\|)$$

along with

$$\gamma = \|(\begin{array}{cc} E_{21} & F_{21} \end{array}) \|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

and

$$\eta = \|(E_{12}, F_{12})\|_{\mathcal{B}}$$

Suppose $\delta > 0$ and $\gamma\eta/\delta^2 < 1/4$.
Then there is a pair of operators (Q, P) with

$$\left\| \left(\begin{array}{cc} Q, & P \end{array} \right) \right\|_{\mathcal{B}} \le \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$$

such that
$$X_1' = X_1 + U_2 P$$
$$Y_2' = Y_2 + V_1 Q^*$$

satisfy

$$((V_1, Y_2')^*(A + E)(X_1', U_2), (V_1, Y_2')^*(B + F)(X_1', U_2)) =$$

$$\left(\begin{pmatrix} A_{11} + E_{11} + E_{12}P & E_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} + E_{22} + QE_{12} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} + F_{11} + F_{12}P & F_{12} \\ 0 & B_{22} + F_{22} + QF_{12} \end{pmatrix} \right)$$

(B.7)

and so $(A_{11}', B_{11}') = (A_{11} + E_{11} + E_{12}P, B_{11} + F_{11} + F_{12}P)$ *form the generalized Rayleigh quotients of the perturbed operator pair, and as a result, we have*

$$\|A_{11} - A_{11}'\| \le \|E_{11} + E_{12}P\| \le \|E_{11}\| + \|E_{12}\| \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$$

$$\|B_{11} - B_{11}'\| \le \|F_{11} + F_{12}P\| \le \|F_{11}\| + \|F_{12}\| \frac{2\gamma}{\delta}$$

Proof. Existence of a unique solution (Q, P) with the specified properties follows if there exist (Q, P) such that left multiplying (B.6) by $\begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ Q & I \end{pmatrix}$ and right multiplying by $\begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ P & I \end{pmatrix}$ sets the lower left elements in (B.7) to 0. This holds if there is unique solution to

$$\begin{pmatrix} Q(A_{11} + E_{11}) + (A_{22} + E_{22})P \\ Q(B_{11} + F_{11}) + (B_{22} + F_{22})P \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} E_{21} \\ F_{21} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} QE_{12}P \\ QF_{12}P \end{pmatrix}$$

Existence of a unique solution here follows from application of Theorem 3.1 in Stewart (1973), the Lipschitz and norm bound shown for the quadratic component above, and the lower bound on δ which lower bounds the minimum singular value of the lefthand side. $\qquad\square$

C   Supplementary Results

C.1   Measurability of Solutions

It can be shown that the pointwise in x definition of a recursive solution to a rational expectations model with function valued states generates a measurable stochastic process for (x_t, y_t) under mild measurability conditions on the functions chosen.

Condition 4. (i) Let $\{z_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}$ be an i.i.d. sequence on the infinite product of independent copies of $(\mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_z, \mu^z)$ and initial value x_0 be defined on $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ with distribution μ_0^x, where Σ_x is a sigma field containing Σ_z. (ii) Fix $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$. Suppose $h(x, \sigma)$ is $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x) \to (\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ measurable, $g(x, \sigma)$ is $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x) \to (\mathcal{B}_y, \Sigma_y)$ measurable for some Σ_y, and F is measurable with respect to the product sigma field $\Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_y \otimes \Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_y$ on $\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y \times \mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_y$

The measurability restrictions on h and g do impose some nontrivial limitations on the class of solutions to be considered by ruling out auxiliary randomness in the policy functions for aggregate variables beyond that included in z. For certain classes of models, randomization may be necessary to ensure existence of a solution, which may require expansion of the set of state variables: see Cao (2016) for discussion. Because the model will be solved by approximating near a point with no aggregate variability, the method cannot accommodate models which have no solution without aggregate randomness.

Proposition 1. *The series defined recursively by $x_0 \sim \mu_0^x$, $x_{2,t+1} = h_2(x_{2,t}) + \sigma z_{t+1}$, $x_{1t+1} = h_1(x_t, \sigma)$, $y_t = g(x_t, \sigma) \; \forall t \geq 0$, where h, g are a recursive solution satisfying Condition 1, is measurable with respect to the infinite product sigma field and $\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x,\sigma), h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', \sigma), \sigma)$ coincides with the conditional expectation of $F(x_t, g(x_t, \sigma), h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma\eta z_{t+1}, g(h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma\eta z_{t+1}, \sigma), \sigma)$ at time t given $x_t = x$.*

Proof. See Appendix F. □

C.2 Weakening the Fréchet differentiability assumption

In practice, the assumption that an operator $F : \mathcal{H}_1 \to \mathcal{H}_2$ be Fréchet differentiable can be overly strong for many applications. Fortunately, in the cases where this assumption may not hold, there exist several modified or weaker notions for which the method described can still be used, with only slightly weaker guarantees. The particular case where this is likely to go awry is when the operator is defined only over a space of densities, which come with multiple desiderata in addition to the requirement tht they live in a Hilbert space, viz, nonnegativity and the requirement to integrate to 1. A simple way to accomodate the latter is by representing $\tilde{f} = f - \bar{f}$, the deviation of density f from a fixed value $\bar{f}$ (usually the steady state), as an element

of L_0^2, the set of square integrable functions which integrate to 0. The positivity condition creates much greater difficulties.

As an illustrative example, consider the following nonlinear operator $G : f(x) \in \mathscr{F}_\epsilon \subseteq L_0^2 \to L^2$

$$G[f(.)](y) := \int \frac{g(y)}{f(x)} dx$$

where $\mathscr{F}_\epsilon$ is $\{f(x) \in L_0^2 : f(x) > \epsilon\}$ for some $\epsilon > 0$, a set of square integrable densities uniformly bounded below, and $g(y) \in L^2$. Suppose there exists $\bar{f} \in \mathscr{F}_\epsilon$ at which we are interested in taking the derivative of G, without loss of generality denoted $0 \in L_0^2$. To be Fréchet differentiable, it would be necessary that for some $r > 0$, it is the case that there exists a linear operator G_0 such that $\lim\limits_{\|f\| \to 0} \frac{\|G(f) - G(0) - G_0[f]\|}{\|f\|}$ where this holds for any path with $\|f\| \to 0$. Unfortunately, for any r, $\exists f_r \in L_0^2$ such that $\|f\| < r$ but ess inf $f(x) < \epsilon$ (or indeed, less than any fixed constant, including 0). That is, $\mathscr{F}_\epsilon$ has empty interior with respect to the L_0^2 norm, as does any uniformly bounded subset of L^2. As a result, a limit does not exist and this operator does not have a Fréchet derivative.

There are several solutions which may be feasible, depending on the class of operators.

Work in another Hilbert space

The space of square integrable density functions is not itself a Hilbert space, but there do exist several alternate spaces that can be used to represent densities while maintaining a Hilbert space structure. Petersen & Müller (2016) survey some of the difficulties that this causes, and suggest the use of the corresponding quantile functions, endowed with a norm and inner product. One possibility suggested in the context of perturbative solutions of economic models by Chung (2007) is the space of functions $h(x) \in L^2$ where a density is represented as a function $f(x) = h(x)^2$. Disadvantages of this space are that expectations are no longer linear operators, representations of densities in this space are not unique, and the space of densities, with $\int h(x)^2 dx = 1$ is not a linear vector space, and so additive perturbations must take one outside the space of densities, which can cause issues with operators not well defined for objects which are not densities.

Another useful choice is the "Bayes Hilbert Space" of log densities (equivalently, of infinite exponential family representations of densities) equipped with a particular

set of vector space operations and inner product which ensures that the space has a Hilbert space structure: see Seo (2017) for details and results. One again loses the linearity of expectations, but preserves uniqueness (in the sense of isometric isomorphism to L_0^2). This space retains the properties of a vector space and ensures that an open ball in this vector space may correspond to a set of densities bounded away from 0, which allows operators like G remain Fréchet differentiable at any point in $\mathscr{F}_\epsilon$. For these reasons, this appears to be a promising avenue for ensuring Hilbert space structure and Fréchet differentiability in the context of operators defined over densities.

To illustrate, letting $\tilde{f}$ denote the element of the Bayes Hilbert space corresponding to density f, we may rewrite G as

$$G[\tilde{f}(.)](y) := \int g(y) \frac{\int \exp(\tilde{f}(s)) ds}{\exp(\tilde{f}(x))} dx$$

and the Fréchet derivative of this operator with respect to $\tilde{f}$ at a point $\bar{f}$ in the direction of perturbation $h(.)$ as

$$G_{\bar{f}}[h(.)] := -\int \exp(\bar{f}(s)) ds \int g(y) \frac{[h(x)]}{\exp(\bar{f}(x))} dx + \int \exp(\bar{f}(s))[h(s)] ds \int \frac{g(y)}{\exp(\bar{f}(x))} dx$$

Extend Hadamard derivatives

For operators defined or differentiable only on subsets (not necessarily subspaces) of infinite dimensional Banach spaces, it may sometimes be desirable to consider the Hadamard derivative (see Flett (1980)) tangential to a set, which requires a derivative to be defined uniformly only over compact sets and so is weaker than the Fréchet derivative, which requires uniformity over closed balls, which in infinite dimensions are not compact. While the chain rule and a version of the implicit function theorem also apply for this class of derivatives, and so a linear approximation may be defined by the same equations with the Hadamard in place of the Fréchet derivative (and the derivatives exactly coincide on finite dimensional spaces), the Taylor expansion will in be defined only over the subset on which a Hadamard derivative exists, and have a remainder with size dependent on the direction of the path of the approach, rather than just the norm. In the case where the domain contains an open ball in the

60

larger infinite-dimensional Banach space, the domain restriction can then be removed by extending the derivatives by the Hahn-Banach theorem to a larger space in a canonical way. If a solution does exist and is Hadamard differentiable, the Hadamard derivatives of the operators of interest will coincide on their domain with the extended operators on the total space. When this is the case, the same first order approximation may be constructed and approximated by the algorithm provided, but will be valid only for directions in which Hadamard differentiability holds.

The disadvantage of this strategy is that it is not applicable to operators which have no natural definition on an open ball, which includes, as an important case, operators defined over the space of densities or some other cone in the infinite dimensional Banach space, including operators like G above.

Extend the Right Derivative

For operators defined specifically over a cone, such as the space of square integrable densities with L^2 norm, there exists an alternate notion of derivative which can preserve many of the properties of the Fréchet derivative, the 'right derivative' over a cone K: see Deimling (2010, Ch. 6). Letting K be a cone in an a Banach space $\mathcal{B}$, and $F: x + K \cap B_r(0) \to \mathcal{B}$ an operator on that cone, F is right differentiable if there exists an operator $F'_+ \in \mathcal{L}(\overline{K - K}, \mathcal{B})$ such that $\lim\limits_{\|h\| \to 0, h \in K} \frac{\left\| F(x+h) - F(x) - F'_+(x)[h] \right\|}{\|h\|} = 0$. In other words, we require norm convergence of the perturbations, but only along directions inside of a (positive) cone. This ensures that the derivative yields an approximation in norm and not just along a path, but allows differentiation of operators like G, which may not be defined or bounded outside of such a cone.

If this limit exists, the operator can be extended from K to a larger space, and for the case of interest to us where $\mathcal{B} = L^2$ and $K = L^2_+ := \{x \in L^2 : x(t) \geq 0 \ a.e.\}$ or, similarly, L^2_0 and L^2_{0+}, the operator can be extended to $\mathcal{L}(L^2, L^2)$ (respectively $\mathcal{L}(L^2_0, L^2_0)$) and so provides a bounded linear operator on a Hilbert space which can be used in place of the Fréchet derivatives in all derivations. More precisely

Lemma 5. *Let $F: x + L^2_+ \cap B_r(0) \to L^2$ be right differentiable with right derivative F'_+ at x. Then there exists an extension $F'_+ \in \mathcal{L}(L^2, L^2)$. Similarly, this result holds with L^2 replaced by L^2_0*

Proof. $F'_+[h]$ is well defined for any $h \in K$. For $h \in K - K := \{y - z : y, z \in K\}$,

61

define $F'_+[h] = F'_+[y] - F'_+[z]$. For $h \in \overline{K-K}$, define $F'_+[h] = \lim\limits_{\|h_k - h\| \to 0, \ h_k \in K-K} F'_+[h_k]$ which is well defined due to the boundedness of F'_+ on $K-K$.

Next, show $L^2_+ - L^2_+ = L^2$, following Definition 19.1 and results in Deimling (2010). By example 19.2, L^2_+ is *fully regular*, and by proposition 19.2 it is *normal*. The dual cone K^* of L^2_+ is also L^2_+, and so by proposition 19.4 because K^* is normal, K is *reproducing*, which means by definition $L^2_+ - L^2_+ = L^2$.

The result for L^2_0 proceeds analogously. $\qquad\square$

In this case, the Taylor expansion of the policy function can be understood to be an approximation in norm for all perturbations lying within the positive cone. Further, in some cases, the approximation may also apply in the case of a subset of perturbations lying outside the positive cone. In particular, for operators defined over square integrable density functions $F : L^2_{0+} \to L^2$, it may be the case that at some point x we have $\lim\limits_{\|h\| \to 0, h \in K-\delta} \frac{\left\| F(x+h) - F(x) - F'_+(x)[h] \right\|}{\|h\|} = 0$ for some $\delta > 0$. In these cases, the derivative may be defined directly over the space $K - \delta$, which shifts the cone by some small amount and so is strictly larger than the positive cone, and the Taylor remainder also converges in norm over perturbations in this larger set. By the above lemma, as the right derivative has canonical extension to the full space, this operator may be used in place of a Fréchet derivative in all operations here.

This extension does suffer some limitations. In particular, an operator norm convergent Taylor expansion of a nonlinear operator between spaces of densities will not in general preserve the restriction of the output to the space of densities. This may or may not be a problem, depending on the desired application.

To illustrate, consider the operator $G[f]$. Its right derivative at $\bar{f} \in \mathscr{F}_\epsilon$, which coincides with the Gateaux derivative and Hadamard derivative for directions within the positive cone, is given by

$$G_{\bar{f}}[h(.)] := - \int \frac{g(y)}{\bar{f}(x)^2}[h(x)]dx$$

By the above arguments, the Taylor expansion based on this derivative converges in norm to the true operator for perturbations of the form $\bar{f} + h$ with $h \in L^2_{0+}$, but may also be shown to converge in norm for perturbations restricted to the space $K - \delta$ for any $\delta < \epsilon$.

For the geography model described in the main text, which contains operators

acting on spaces of non-negative functions, one should interpret the derivatives given as extended right derivatives, and so the local representation should be interpreted as over a resricted space of this form. None of this affects the computation or comparison to the exact projection representation of these derivatives, which describe computation of the derivatives themselves, which are well-defined regardless of of the precise relation to the full nonlinear model.

C.3   Special cases in which a known decomposition exists

To compute the functional derivatives of the equilibrium policy operators of a rational expectations model with Hilbert valued states, it is generally necessary to separate the state space into forward looking and backward-looking, or 'unstable' and 'stable' components. In some special cases, these components correspond to known or analytically identifiable state variables. This generally requires that certain derivatives equal 0: a type of exclusion restriction which ensures that backward-looking variables are not influenced by forward looking variables or vice versa. Exclusion restrictions of these sort are prevalent in partial equilibrium models, in which a forward looking decision may be made given a persistent and purely exogenous state variable. For example, if the feedback between population and economic activity were to be removed from the geography model described in Section 3, the migration decision problem given an exogenous distribution of wages would fall into this class. Similar exclusion restrictions may also arise in cases where the equilibrium environment and decision problem are carefully tailored so that a persistent backward looking state has no impact on forward looking decisions which do affect the state. A special case of this structure is when decision making is purely myopic, either due to a carefully tailored incentive structure or due to behavioral constraints on the decision makers. Models with these kinds of exclusion restrictions may be described as *triangular*, and are strongly related to the class of *block-recursive* solutions. While the restrictions required to ensure that such a condition holds are often stringent, the computational and analytical tractability that they allow makes them an important special case.

Let us consider two kinds of triangular models, roughly corresponding to the cases described above where forward-looking decisions are not influenced by a persistent state and where a persistent state is not influenced by a forward looking decision. I will call such cases *upper triangular* and *lower triangular*, respectively, for reasons

that will become apparent. In the upper triangular case, the partial derivative of the equilibrium conditions with respect to the predetermined state variables x is 0 in the equations describing the forward looking decision. This can occur in models with myopic decision making, either due to behavioral constraints or due to a structure of preferences, production or technology designed to produce the knife-edge condition that the optimal decision is independent of the state of the world. In the notation from above, in such cases, the derivatives may be decomposed as

$$(B, A) = [-F_x \ - F_y, F_{x'} \ F_{y'}] = \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

without any (additional) unitary transformation, so $Q = U = I$, and the forward and backward looking state variables may be identified with y and x, respectively. Applying results from Section 4 on the derivatives of the policy functions, obtain $g_x = 0$ and $h_x = S_{11}^{-1} T_{11}$. This says that, consistent with the intuition, the forward looking state has 0 derivative with respect to the persistent backward-looking one, and the backward looking state evolves autonomously. This is a locally stable solution if the spectrum of $S_{11}^{-1} T_{11}$ lies within the unit circle.

The lower triangular case occurs when the derivative of the equilibrium conditions with respect to the jump state variable y is 0 in the equations describing the backward looking persistent state variable. This can occur in partial equilibrium or small open economy type settings, in which aggregate states or distributions are determined completely exogenously. In this case, the derivatives are decomposed as

$$(B, A) = [-F_x \ - F_y, F_{x'} \ F_{y'}] = \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & 0 \\ T_{21} & T_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & 0 \\ S_{21} & S_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

without any unitary transform, so again y and x may be identified with forward and backward-looking state variables. In this case, a slightly different calculation may be applied to obtain the derivatives of the policy operators. Applying the condition

$$\begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & 0 \\ S_{21} & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ g_x h_x \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & 0 \\ T_{21} & T_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} I \\ g_x \end{bmatrix}$$

obtain the solution $h_x = S_{11}^{-1} T_{11}$, which is to say that x evolves according to a law of motion which does not depend on the forward looking jump state y. The derivative

g_x of the policy function giving y in terms of x, satisfies the equation

$$T_{22}g_x = S_{21}h_x - T_{21} + S_{22}g_xh_x$$

which may either be expressed recursively as an infinite sum, or by treating g_x as an element of the Banach space of bounded linear operators, in terms the inverse of the linear operator $T_{22}[.] - S_{22}[.]S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}$, if it exists, as $g_x = (T_{22}[.] - S_{22}[.]S_{11}^{-1}T_{11})^{-1}(S_{21}S_{11}^{-1}T_{11} - T_{21})$. [14] While neither of these formulas is particularly straightforward to apply, often inverses may be computable in closed form, allowing simple evaluation of the effect of a state variable of interest on an intertemporal decision problem without requiring the computation of approximate operator decompositions.

C.4   Verifying uniqueness of h_x

The following lemma provides an alternative equivalent representation for h_x. Among other uses, this representation implies that the conditions for uniqueness of a solution g_x imply uniqueness of the solution h_x.

Lemma 6. *Let $(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}$ be bounded and let g_x solve $U_{21} + U_{22}g_x = 0$. Then*

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_x &= (U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x) \\
&= (\varphi^{X*}\varphi^X + g_x^*g_x)^{-1}(g_x^*U_{12}^* + U_{11}^*)S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x) \quad\quad (\text{C.1})
\end{aligned}
$$

As a corollary, note that $\varphi^{X*}\varphi^X + g_x^*g_x$ is a quadratic form satisfying $\inf\limits_{\|x\|_{\mathcal{H}_x}=1}\|(\varphi^{X*}\varphi^X + g_x^*g_x)x\| \geq \inf\limits_{\|x\|_{\mathcal{H}_x}=1}\|\varphi^{X*}\varphi^X x\| = 1$ and so this inverse always exists and is bounded. Therefore, if $(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}$ is bounded, a stable solution exists for h_x, and if U_{22}^{-1} is bounded, this solution is unique.

Proof. See Appendix F.   □

---

[14]If we may use the familiar notation $\text{vec}(g_x)$ to denote the map from the space of operators to an isomorphic Banach space, viewed as a vector space, we may write this formula suggestively as $\text{vec}(g_x) = (I \otimes T_{22} - (S_{11}^{-1}T_{11})^* \otimes S_{22})^{-1}\text{vec}(S_{21}S_{11}^{-1}T_{11} - T_{21})$, which gives the solution in terms of the finite dimensional vec operator and the Kronecker product when $\mathcal{H}_x$ and $\mathcal{H}_y$ are finite dimensional.

C.5 Ensuring Asymptotic Diagonality

Requiring all components of the derivatives to either be compact or to be composed of identity operators restricts the functional forms of allowable models, potentially in ways which rule out economically meaningful effects. For example, in a model with a distribution of characteristics which evolve independently across individuals driven by a Markov process, the distribution is a state variable and its evolution is described by an adjoint Markov operator. When the conditional density of the process given any initial state is sufficiently smooth, the operator mapping the density today to the density tomorrow will be compact and the density tomorrow enters via an identity. However, when there is a point mass in the conditional density, the transition operator need not be compact. Point masses can describe inertia, such as that induced by fixed costs (Stokey, 2008) or indexation, or mass movement along a discontinuous path. Similarly, decision problems where the object chosen is a function, ubiquitous in economics in the form of best-response policies, can yield first order conditions in which the function which is a choice variable enters into a nonlinear utility function, resulting in a functional derivative which is a multiplication operator, which may be noncompact. In some cases, it may be possible to transform the condition into one where the noncompact operator is an identity by applying its inverse to the equation, but this can eliminate only one non-identity operator from the equation. In the case where this decision problem over functions faces a state variable which is also a function, as in games or contracting problems, or government choosing nonlinear policies over a continuum of agents, goods, or locations, there may be multiple nonlinear operators in the decision problem which may prevent reducing to an asymptotically diagonal form.

When possible, applying an invertible transformation to both sides of an equilibrium equation can ensure that the asymptotically diagonal form holds without making changes to the model itself. In other cases, it may be possible to construct a modified model which is close to the original but which satisfies the condition that its derivatives are asymptotically diagonal. For example, if compactness fails due to a law of motion with discrete jumps to a fixed value, creating a discontinuity in the distribution at that value, the discontinuity may be removed if the discrete jump is accompanied by a small amount of continuously distributed noise, thereby smoothing out the conditional distribution, though the shape of the resulting distribution may be very close if the noise is small enough. Similarly, discrete actions induced

by hard constraints can be made to vary continuously by replacing hard constraints with smooth but sharply growing penalties which induce similar but smooth behavior. These sorts of smoothing transformations are commonly used to employ numerical methods which rely on smoothness (see Den Haan (2010) for commentary), though it should be noted that these changes in the model may not be innocuous. While the resulting behavior at the individual level may be extremely similar, the resulting operator describing the law of motion for the distribution across individuals, which is now compact, as desired, must be far away from the true operator for some input functions. As a result, this approach does not guarantee that the resulting aggregate behavior will be close. Instead, it provides a solution to a different model, with similar individual level behavior. However, if the additional noise or smoothing of the constraint is empirically justified, this is not necessarily a concern. For example, the extreme value heterogeneity in location preference in the model of migration decisions not only ensures a smooth law of motion for the population distribution, it also reflects the believable feature that there is idiosyncratic preference heterogeneity which ensures that individuals do not all move to the same place.

D Additional Results on Geography Model

D.1 Static Equilibrium and its Derivatives

Here, the static spatial equilibrium of the economic geography model of Krugman (1996) is described. Equations (A.24)-(A.27) of that model are sufficient to solve for the spatial distributions of output, prices, and wages given a pre-determined population distribution $\lambda_t(x)$.

The static variables included in these equations are $Y(x)$, output at location x, $T(x)$, the price index at location x, and $w(x)$, the nominal wage in terms of the nontraded good. Parameters used are σ, the elasticity of substitution of the CES aggregator across varieties, μ, the Cobb-Douglas expenditure share on traded goods, and τ, the scale factor in the proportional iceberg trade costs $1-\mathrm{e}^{-\tau|x-y|}$ of shipping a good from point x to point y. Given a predetermined distribution of population $\lambda_t(x)$, a static equilibrium of the model is given by functions $\{Y_t(x), T_t(x), w_t(x), \omega_t(x)\}$

satisfying the system of nonlinear integral equations

$$Y_t(x) = 1 - \mu + \mu\lambda_t(x)w_t(x) \tag{D.1}$$

$$T_t(x) = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\int_G \lambda_t(z)w_t(z)^{1-\sigma}e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{1}{1-\sigma}} \tag{D.2}$$

$$w_t(x) = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\int_G Y_t(z)T_t(z)^{\sigma-1}e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{1}{\sigma}} \tag{D.3}$$

$$\omega_t(x) = w_t(x)T_t(x)^{-\mu} \tag{D.4}$$

This system of equations is not analytically tractable and has no explicit solution for ω_t in terms of λ_t, but such a solution, expressed as $\omega(\lambda_t)$, may be calculated implicitly.

For the purposes of the linearization, it is sufficient to calculate the derivative $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ of $\omega(\lambda_t)$, the equilibrium operator mapping population to real wages implicitly. Taking functional derivatives of equations (D.1),(D.2), (D.3), and (D.4) evaluated at the uniform steady state, obtain

$$\frac{dY}{d\lambda} = \mu[.]$$

$$\frac{dY}{dw} = \mu[.]$$

$$\frac{dT}{d\lambda} = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\right]^{\frac{1}{1-\sigma}}\frac{1}{1-\sigma}\left[\int_G e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{\sigma}{1-\sigma}}\int_G [.]e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz$$

$$\frac{dT}{dw} = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\right]^{\frac{1}{1-\sigma}}\frac{1}{1-\sigma}\left[\int_G e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{\sigma}{1-\sigma}}(1-\sigma)\int_G [.]e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz$$

$$\frac{dw}{dY} = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\right]^{\frac{1}{\sigma}}\frac{1}{\sigma}\left[\int_G e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{1-\sigma}{\sigma}}\int_G [.]e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)|x-z|}dz$$

$$\frac{dw}{dT} = \left[\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}\right]^{\frac{1}{\sigma}}\frac{1}{\sigma}\left[\int_G e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)|x-z|}dz\right]^{\frac{1-\sigma}{\sigma}}(\sigma-1)\int_G [.]e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)|x-z|}dz$$

$$\frac{d\omega}{dw} = [.]$$

$$\frac{d\omega}{dT} = -\mu[.]$$

By the chain rule, we can express the derivative of the real wage with respect to

the population distribution as

$$\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda} = \frac{dw}{d\lambda} - \mu(\frac{dT}{dw}\frac{dw}{d\lambda} + \frac{dT}{d\lambda}) \tag{D.5}$$

where by the implicit function theorem in Banach space and the chain rule repeatedly applied,

$$\frac{dw}{d\lambda} = (I - \frac{dw}{dY}\frac{dY}{dw} - \frac{dw}{dT}\frac{dT}{dw})^{-1}(\frac{dw}{dY}\frac{dY}{d\lambda} + \frac{dw}{dT}\frac{dT}{d\lambda}).$$

This operator exists so long as the inverse is well-defined: this can be verified numerically using the characterization in Appendix F.3.

D.2   Derivation of functional autoregressive shock process

To see how shocks taking the form of a functional autoregressive process, or more generally a functional linear process as in Bosq (2000), may naturally enter the description of an economic model based on standard descriptions of individual level behavior, including but not limited to the diffusion equation (3.3) for amenities, consider the following illustration based on linearizing the aggregate dynamics of a standard linear dynamic panel model of the kind commonly used in microeconometric study of the dynamics of income and consumption by consumers or production by firms to model individual behavior.

A simplified version of this model is given by the assumption that, for each agent (or location or other unit) i, the variable of interest ζ_{it} follows the autoregressive process $\zeta_{it+1} = \rho\zeta_{it} + \epsilon_{it+1}$, where ϵ_{it+1} is independent of ζ_{it} and across agents and $|\rho| < 1$. While it is conventional to take an interest in the individual persistence parameter ρ, for the purposes of analysis of aggregates and welfare we may also be interested in the cross sectional distribution of the attribute ζ_{it}, which may be represented by pdf $f_t(\zeta)$. Given a measure 1 continuum of agents following this rule, the evolution of this distribution can be determined from its past value and the distribution of the shock ϵ_{it+1}. To model time varying effects such as aggregate shocks, we may let $\epsilon_{it+1} \overset{i.i.d.}{\sim} p_{t+1}(\epsilon)$ across agents, where the density function $p_{t+1}(.)$ may be taken as a function valued random variable for each t. This models not only mean shifts, as would be captured by time fixed or random effects, but also distributional changes such as the changes in polarization or tail behavior of income risk as documented, for example, in Guvenen *et al.* (2014). Under this assumption,

we have a dynamic equation for the evolution of the distribution of ζ, given by the convolution of the past distribution and the shock distribution

$$f_{t+1}(\zeta) = \int p_{t+1}(\zeta - \rho u) f_t(u) du \qquad \text{(D.6)}$$

which provides a recursive representation for a function valued economic variable of interest, $f_t(.)$, in terms of current and past values of the state, an operator mapping between them, and an exogenous shock which is also function valued, $p_{t+1}(.)$.

The law of motion for the distribution provided by the panel model in (D.6) can be approximated by linearization in the case of 'small' changes in the distribution. To consider the model in the case of small i.i.d. over time aggregate shocks to the cross sectional distribution $p_{t+1}(\epsilon)$ of idiosyncratic shocks, write the law deviations from the mean as $p_{t+1}(\epsilon) - p^*(\epsilon) = \sigma z_{t+1}(\epsilon)$, for $z_{t+1}(\epsilon)$ an i.i.d. over time Bochner mean 0 random function so that at $\sigma = 0$ the distribution of ϵ is constant over time at a fixed distribution $p^*(\epsilon)$. In the notation of Section 2 for the equilibrium conditions of a dynamic model, $x_2' = p_{t+1}(\epsilon) - p^*(\epsilon)$, $z' = z_{t+1}(\epsilon)$ and $h_2(x_2) = 0$ because we have assumed that the exogenous aggregate shocks are not persistent.[15] To complete the description of the model, we may take as the endogenous predetermined variables $x_1 = f_t$, $x_1' = f_{t+1}$, and

$$F(x_1, x_2, x_1', x_2') \;\; = \;\; \begin{bmatrix} f_{t+1}(\zeta) - \int p_{t+1}(\zeta - \rho u) f_t(u) du \\ p_{t+1}(\epsilon) - p^*(\epsilon) \end{bmatrix}$$

as the equilibrium operator defining the model. In this case, all variables are predetermined or exogenous, so there is no y variable. A linear approximation with respect to f and p is given by taking the functional derivative of F with respect to p_t, f_t, p_{t+1}, f_{t+1} around a nonstochastic steady state f^*, p^* satisfying $p(\epsilon) = p^*(\epsilon)$, $f^*(\zeta) = \int p^*(\zeta - \rho u) f^*(u) du$, which exists whenever $|\rho| < 1$ under mild conditions on the density p^* of the error term: see Christensen (2014). Applying the chain rule and the product rule, a Taylor expansion of the law of motion for f_{t+1} in p_{t+1} and f_t

---

[15] Allowing $h_2(x_2)$ in the model to be nonzero would represent persistence in the aggregate shock to the distribution of error terms. After linearization, the cross sectional distribution of ζ, the observable individual characteristic, would then be approximated by a functional ARMA(1,1) process, instead of a functional AR(1).

is given by

$$f_{t+1}(\zeta) = \int p^*(\zeta - \rho u) f^*(u) du + \int p^*(\zeta - \rho u)[f_t(u) - f^*(u)]du$$

$$+ \int [p_{t+1}(\zeta - \rho u) - p^*(\zeta - \rho u)]f^*(u)du + o(\|(f_t - f^*, p_{t+1} - p^*)\|).$$

Substituting in the (already linear) law of motion $p_{t+1} = p^* + \sigma z_{t+1}$ and the steady state relation, obtain

$$f_{t+1}(\zeta) - f^*(\zeta) = \int p^*(\zeta - \rho u)[f_t(u) - f^*(u)]du + \sigma \int z_{t+1}(\zeta - \rho u)f^*(u)du + o(\|(f_t - f^*, p_{t+1} - p^*)\|)$$

which expresses the deviation from the steady state in time $t+1$ as given by a linear operator applied to the deviation from steady state in time t plus, by linearity of the expectation and of the integral operator applied to $z_{t+1}(.)$, a mean 0 exogenous Banach random element. That is, it may be written as

$$f' - f^* \approx B[f - f^*] + \sigma \varepsilon'$$

for some linear operator B and some mean zero noise ε', a linear functional autoregression as in Bosq (2000), so long as both the noise and the deviation from a steady state are small. As similar procedures may be applied to more general dynamic panel data models, one sees that a functional linear process may provide a local approximation to the law of motion for distributions of cross-sectional aggregates for a wide range of commonly used empirical models of individual and aggregate behavior.[16]

D.3   Steady State and Exact Projections

To go from the functional derivatives of the equilibrium conditions to a linear solution, it suffices to find projections onto a complete set of basis functions. The structure of the geography model presented here makes that task particularly simple, because when the basis used is the standard Fourier basis of trigonometric polynomials, the projections can be calculated exactly without numerical integration. The structure can also be used to verify the conditions which ensure that projection approximations

---

[16]For models as simple as in D.6, it is possible to characterize the behavior without approximations: the random linear operator model generalizes the random coefficients model to infinite dimensions, and has been analyzed in Skorohod (1984).

are valid. In fact, the structure allows even more to be said about the solution than can be inferred from Theorem (1). Because the model is block diagonal with respect to the Fourier basis, the solution operator can be calculated exactly for any input given by a Fourier basis function, and so for any bandlimited function.

Recalling from Section 6, the linearized equilibrium conditions in this model are given by

$$
(B, A) = \left(- \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & I \\ P & 0 & \beta P - \beta PP \\ 0 & \Gamma & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \frac{d\omega}{d\lambda} & I & \beta P \\ I & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right)
$$

in which $P[.] = \frac{1}{f} \int \exp(c(x'-x) + \beta \bar{V})[.]dx'$, Γ is likewise an integral operator, and $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ can be shown to be defined in terms of the composition of a number of convolution operators with respect to a Laplace distribution and their inverses. The model is therefore composed of identity and integral operators, exactly the structure needed for the projection approaches developed here to be valid. Moreover, examining the expressions for the derivatives of the economic geography model it can be seen that all of the integral operators are expressed in terms of convolution operators. By the convolution theorem, all convolution operators (and their inverses, as well as the identity) are diagonal in a Fourier basis, and so all operators can be expressed as a convolution with distributions, or equivalently, as multiplication of the Fourier transform of the input by a known function.

Because each functional derivative in the model is diagonal with respect to the Fourier transform, the model can be broken down into blocks corresponding to individual frequencies: there is no interaction across frequencies. Within a frequency, the linearized model can be written in terms of 3×3 matrices of derivatives of each component with respect to perturbations at that frequency. The exception is at frequency 0, where only derivatives with respect to V and ν are taken, as, by Parseval's theorem, functions in $L_0^2(\mathbb{R})$ can be represented in the Fourier domain as sequences of Fourier coefficients with the coefficient at frequency 0 equal to 0.

Among other things, this block diagonal structure implies that Condition 1.(ii) regarding the modulus of continuity of the Schur decomposition holds so long as Condition 1.(i) holds. Conditions 1.(i) and 1.(iii), requiring existence and uniqueness of a Schur decomposition into components inside and outside the unit circle with unstable subspace isomorphic to the space spanned by the jump variable (in this case V), may also be verified for any given set of parameters by ensuring the conditions hold for

each finite dimensional subsystem. In order for the system to have a locally stable rational expectations equilibrium, it must be the case that at each frequency, the system has two generalized eigenvalues inside the unit circle, corresponding to the predetermined variables ν and λ, and one generalized eigenvalue outside, corresponding to the jump variable V. Such a condition is not general: it requires restrictions on the parameter values to ensure that such a solution exists. However, these conditions can be guaranteed by a finite set of computations

Impressionistically, because the value of a location is a weighted average of future wages (a function of population), and because the current population is a weighted average of past values, the system remains stable only if this mutual reinforcement is not too strong. Otherwise, at certain frequencies, at which more than one eigenvalue is unstable, the linearized model implies that value grows without bound and population does as well: this is the conclusion of Krugman (1996), which does not derive dynamics from forward-looking decisions. However, the stability condition on the eigenvalues is substantially weaker than the condition imposed by Krugman, that the impact of population on wages be negative for all frequencies. Positive feedback is consistent with stability of a rational expectations equilibrium so long as the effect on wages is expected to be temporary. Moreover, if the feedback is temporary, the population response is damped, and so the degree of mutual reinforcement is even lower. As a result, only frequencies where the parameterization implies that the feedback from population to wages is so large that no policy rule which eventually returns to steady state can be constructed are a problem for calculating a forward looking solution.

To consider which frequencies might be problematic, note that at extremely high frequencies, because convolution with a smooth density dampens high frequency fluctuations, the mutual reinforcement phenomenon is dampened and eventually disappears, so these frequencies are stable. Similarly, due to the dispersive forces in the geographic equilibrium model, at extremely low frequencies, increasing population actually reduces wages, ensuring stability. It is at intermediate frequencies where population growth and real wage growth are complementary, and parameters must be chosen so that at these frequencies the degree of complementarity is not so great as to prevent the mean-reversion induced by the dispersion of population due to idiosyncratic tastes from ensuring eventual return to uniformity after a temporary shock. This suggests that a parameterization of adjustment costs which ensures that medium to high frequency fluctuations are rapidly smoothed out is needed. However,

degree of smoothing and size of adjustment costs have a nontrivial relationship. For quadratic costs, a higher scale is equivalent to a smaller variance of the Gaussian flows and so results in less smoothing. However, while changing from quadratic to linear (in absolute distance) costs results in Laplace flows with substantially more movement to long distances as it lowers costs of moving large distances, it raises costs of moving short distances and so decreases mean reversion at medium to high frequencies. In practice, stability holds for a very broad range of parameter values.

Formally, at each frequency not equal to 0, the model is represented by a 3×3 block of the Bellman equation, the population transition, and the shock transition at that frequency. At a representative frequency ϕ, the model can be taken as a set of matrix equations in Fourier transform of the vector of endogenous functions at that frequency. The matrix of derivatives with respect to $(\hat{\lambda}_\phi, \hat{\nu}_\phi, \hat{V}_\phi)$ is

$$
B_\phi = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hat{P}_\phi & 0 & \beta\hat{P}_\phi - \beta\hat{P}_\phi^2 \\ 0 & \hat{\Gamma}_\phi & 0 \end{bmatrix}
$$

where $\hat{P}_\phi$ is the Fourier transform of $\frac{1}{f}\exp(c(x)+\beta\bar{V})$ evaluated at frequency ϕ and $\hat{\Gamma}_\phi$ is the Fourier transform of $\Gamma(x)$ evaluated at frequency ϕ. The matrix of derivatives with respect to $(\hat{\lambda}'_\phi, \hat{\nu}'_\phi, \hat{V}'_\phi)$ is

$$
A_\phi = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi & 1 & \beta\hat{P}_\phi \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}
$$

where $\frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi$ the Fourier transform of $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ at frequency ϕ, is derived in Appendix E.

Finally, at frequency 0, by dropping the transition equation which does not act over this frequency because perturbations of λ are restricted to lie in L_0^2, the space of functions integrating to 0, to ensure that the density λ integrates to 1, the system is represented by 2×2 blocks of derivatives with respect to $(\hat{\nu}_\phi, \hat{V}_\phi)$ and $(\hat{\nu}'_\phi, \hat{V}'_\phi)$ given by

$$
(B_0, A_0) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \hat{\Gamma}_0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \beta\hat{P}_0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right)
$$

To construct an approximate solution from these projections, note that because

the operator pairs are block diagonal, a fully upper triangular infinite dimensional system can be constructed so long as each block can be placed in upper triangular form. Together, each pair of matrices forms a finite dimensional linear rational expectations system which can be evaluated by standard algorithms for calculating perturbative expansions of such systems, such as the Schmitt-Grohe & Uribe (2004) procedure, based on the algorithm of Klein (2000). Here, no changes need to be made to the finite dimensional procedure: it is simply applied independently at each integer frequency ϕ. The derivatives of the policy functions are then given by the collection of derivatives at each frequency. For each $\phi \neq 0$, the policy functions $\hat{h}_\phi : (\hat{\lambda}_\phi, \hat{\nu}_\phi) \to (\hat{\lambda}'_\phi, \hat{\nu}'_\phi)$ and $\hat{g}_\phi : (\hat{\lambda}_\phi, \hat{\nu}_\phi) \to \hat{V}_\phi$ are given by 2×2 and 1×2 matrices. The first order approximate policy operators are then represented with respect to the Fourier basis as block-diagonal infinite matrices $\hat{h}$ and $\hat{g}$, with $\hat{h}_\phi$ and $\hat{g}_\phi$ on the diagonals, respectively, so that for general inputs in $L_0^2(\mathbb{R}) \times L^2(\mathbb{R})$, they may be represented as $h = \mathcal{F}^{-1}\hat{h}\mathcal{F}$ and $g = \mathcal{F}^{-1}\hat{g}\mathcal{F}$ where $\mathcal{F}$ is the Fourier transform and $\mathcal{F}^{-1}$ is the inverse Fourier transform.

For bandlimited perturbations, a finite representation h_x^K, g_x^K given by concatenating the first K frequencies is exact. More generally, the functional derivatives generated by taking an increasing finite collection of frequencies converge in the strong operator topology, and for any components which are compact, in the operator norm topology. Operator norm convergence follows from application of Theorem (1). To see that the conditions are met, note that for smooth adjustment costs and transition functions, $\hat{P}_\phi$, $\hat{\Gamma}_\phi$, and $\frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi$ converge to 0, and so compactness and convergence of the projected derivatives in operator norm follows. Moreover, as $\phi \to \infty$, (B_ϕ, A_ϕ) converges to

$$(B_I^i, A_I^i) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right),$$

and by the continuity of the generalized Schur decomposition with respect to perturbations, the policy functions at each frequency also converge. It can be shown that the first derivatives of the policy functions $g_x^i = \hat{g}_\infty : (\hat{\lambda}_\infty, \hat{\nu}_\infty) \to \hat{V}_\infty$ and $h_x^i = \hat{h}_\infty : (\hat{\lambda}_\infty, \hat{\nu}_\infty) \to (\hat{\lambda}'_\infty, \hat{\nu}'_\infty)$ generated by calculating the finite dimensional linear rational expectations solution for this pair are given by matrices which are identically 0, and so $h_K = h_x^K$ and $g_K = g_x^K$. As a result, by taking an increasing set of frequencies, the finite representation can be used to compute a response which is

accurate uniformly over all input functions, and not just bandlimited ones.

It is possible to determine the rate of convergence directly from the exact representations rather than by applying the rate results from Theorem (1). Note that perturbation results for generalized eigenvectors and eigenvalues imply a linear rate of convergence in the Frobenius norm of the perturbation (see Stewart & Sun (1990)), while sufficiently smooth functional forms for adjustment costs and for the transition operator for the exogenous shocks, and the exponential form chosen for trade costs, generate rates of convergence for the entries which are faster than linear in ϕ. As a result, given sufficiently smooth parameterizations, the blocks of the policy function corresponding to each frequency converge at a rate comparable to the slowest rate of each of the components. So long as this converges to 0, this implies that the policy operators are compact (and if this rate is faster than linear, they are Hilbert-Schmidt), and so the policy operators given by taking an increasing finite sequence of blocks converge to the true policy functions in operator norm. One note regarding the form of this convergence is that the perturbation theorem for the Schur subspaces applies only under a separation condition on the generalized eigenvalues, while (B_I^i, A_I^i) has the generalized eigenvalues $(0, \infty, \infty)$. This implies that the blocks corresponding to forward and backward looking components are well separated, while within the block of backward looking components the eigenvalues are not asymptotically well separated and the generalized Schur vectors are not stable. However, the block itself is stable in the sense that the span of the Schur vectors converges, and so the policy functions, which are determined only by the sub-blocks of the Schur matrices, also converge.

Formally, this may be stated as

Lemma 7. *(i)* $g_x^i = \hat{g}_\infty = (0,0)$, $h_x^i = \hat{h}_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ *Suppose*

$$\gamma_\phi := \left\| (B_\phi, A_\phi) - (B_I^i, A_I^i) \right\|_F \to 0$$

as $|\phi| \to \infty$. *Then* $\|\hat{g}_\phi - \hat{g}_\infty\|_F = O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}})$ *and* $\left\| \hat{h}_\phi - \hat{h}_\infty \right\|_F = O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}})$ *for large* $|\phi|$, *and so converge to 0 and*

$$h[\lambda(x), \nu(x)] = \hat{h}_0[\int \nu(x)dx] + \sum_{\phi \in \mathbb{Z}\backslash\{0\}} (\hat{h}_\phi \begin{bmatrix} \int \exp(-2\pi i\phi x)\lambda(x)dx \\ \int \exp(-2\pi i\phi x)\nu(x)dx \end{bmatrix}) \circ \begin{bmatrix} \exp(-2\pi i\phi x) \\ \exp(-2\pi i\phi x) \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$g[\lambda(x), \nu(x)] = \hat{g}_0[\int \nu(x)dx] + \sum_{\phi \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}} (\hat{g}_\phi \begin{bmatrix} \int \exp(-2\pi i\phi x)\lambda(x)dx \\ \int \exp(-2\pi i\phi x)\nu(x)dx \end{bmatrix}) \cdot \exp(-2\pi i\phi x)$$

are compact. (ii) Suppose in addition that $\gamma_\phi = O(|\phi|^{-(1+\epsilon)})$ for some $\epsilon > 0$. Then $h[\lambda(x), \nu(x)]$ and $g[\lambda(x), \nu(x)]$ are Hilbert-Schmidt.

Proof. See Appendix F. $\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad$ □

This result not only gives compactness and rates of convergence, it also implies that the approximated policy operators converge in a stronger norm, the Hilbert Schmidt norm. The demonstration that these operators are compact and Hilbert-Schmidt implies that in principle, the policy function in this model could be consistently estimated from a time series of observations of (λ, ν) by procedures such as those described in Bosq (2000); Guillas (2001).

D.3.1 Stability Conditions

While in principle a closed form is available for the policy functions at each frequency for arbitrary parameter values, it is an unintuitive nonlinear function of the roots of a cubic polynomial, so instead I verify the stability conditions at each frequency numerically at each value of the parameters examined. By the stability of the system at (B_I^i, A_I^i) and the convergence of (B_ϕ, A_ϕ) to (B_I^i, A_I^i), it is sufficient to verify the eigenvalue condition for the finite set of frequencies where the derivatives differ by more than some small constant from (B_I^i, A_I^i).

In practice, and in contrast to the generically explosive limit generated by the ad-hoc dynamics imposed in Krugman (1996), only for relatively extreme parameterizations does the model with forward-looking decision making lack an equilibrium which is locally stable. The complementarity between wages and population at intermediate frequencies generated by agglomerative forces in the model and the substitutability at low frequencies generated by the dispersive forces are reflected in the cross-derivatives of the transition operator $\hat{h}$ mapping shocks to living standards and population this period to those next period. The complementarity and substitutability manifest as a positive coefficient in the map from the shock $\hat{\nu}_\phi$ to amenity value today to population tomorrow at intermediate frequencies and a negative coefficient at low frequencies,

respectively. However, the presence of a positive coefficient does not generate explosive behavior if the shock itself is mean-reverting, as assumed, and the autonomous dynamics of population are also stable. Here, except when the elasticity of substitution across varieties σ is extremely low so the benefits of agglomeration in a region with large population and a large variety of goods is high, the natural smoothing of population across regions generated by heterogeneous idiosyncratic preferences is the dominant determinant of the speed of adjustment of population at a given frequency. As a result, even for very strong agglomerative forces, it is also necessary for adjustment costs of moving to be quite large before complementarities at some frequency dominate and generate dynamics which are locally unstable.

In part, this expresses an important difference between the myopic and forward-looking models. In the myopic case, even small complementarities result in a cumulative process which continues without bound, while in a forward looking setup, if the effects of such complementarities are transient, their impact on value and so on decisions is bounded and so is attenuated. From an economic perspective, forward-looking decisions respond less strongly to changes perceived as temporary, and so even in the presence of complementarities, regional shocks need not be destabilizing. To be fair, however, some of the difference also reflects the additional dispersive force provided by idiosyncratic preference shocks, though it's not clear how one would generate a smooth transition law as in Krugman (1996) even with myopic decision making without some other smoothing force.

D.4 Calibration

To characterize the dynamics of population and values in the model, I calculate the first derivatives of the policy operators for a fixed set of parameters. For the adjustment cost function $c(x)$, in order to generate a Gaussian conditional distribution of population movements in steady state, I adopt a quadratic specification $c(x) = \frac{1}{2\sigma_c}x^2$, where σ_c parameterizes the cost of moving and is also the standard deviation of the conditional Gaussian distribution. For the kernel describing the persistence of the exogenous shocks $\Gamma(x)$, in order to ensure both stationarity and decay of coefficients to represent smooth diffusion of shocks from their initial locations, I choose a rescaled Gaussian pdf, $\Gamma(x) = \frac{k_\Gamma}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma_\Gamma}\exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma_\Gamma^2}x^2)$, where $|k_\Gamma| < 1$ ensures stationarity at all frequencies and σ_Γ measures the speed at which shocks spread, or, more directly, how

rapidly the autoregressive coefficient on each frequency goes to 0 as the frequency increases.

For the static equilibrium of the model, I borrow parameterizations from Krugman (1996), who considers the ranges $\sigma \in \{4, 5, 6\}$, $\mu \in \{0.2, 0.3, 0.4\}$. As within this range the qualitative behavior of the model is similar, all experiments reported are carried out with $\sigma = 4$, $\mu = 0.4$. While the trade cost parameter τ is left unspecified in the parameterization as it merely normalizes the unit of distance in the model, the relative values of τ, σ_Γ, and σ_c determine the characteristic length scales at which trade, productivity (or other shock) diffusion, and migration operate. Because trade costs are specified as exponential, while migration and productivity diffusion follow a Gaussian and so squared exponential rate of increase in distance, the numbers are not directly comparable. This specification implies that trade at long distances is relatively less costly than migration or diffusion of changes in the economic environment. While difficult to place on a comparable scale, this seems to be qualitatively reasonable for a global or national scale, with long-distance exchange relatively common while long distance migration is comparatively rare. For the purposes of simulations, and without any claim to represent empirically reasonable values, simulations set $\tau = 0.2$, $\sigma_\Gamma = 0.04$, and $\sigma_c = 0.05$, representing again fairly small trade costs and fairly slow diffusion of population and amenity value from an initial location. Along with a value of $k_\Gamma = 0.98$ and discount rate $\beta = 0.96$, these are designed to ensure that fluctuations in the spatial distribution of population and amenity values are persistent and that the model generates substantial variation in the expectations of future distributions.

D.4.1 Finite Domain

While solving the model on an infinite domain ensures a great deal of tractability, it has some disadvantages, of which lack of realism is a minor but nontrivial one. From a more practical perspective, when approximating the integrals via an expansion in basis functions other than trigonometric polynomials, as may be needed for nonperiodic variations of the model, it permits use of compactly-supported basis functions, such as B-splines or (certain classes of) wavelets, without requiring an unbounded number to cover the entire domain. In order to ensure applicability of the wavelet representation, I therefore construct a version of the model in which domain G is finite. In the symmetric case, this change is minor: by setting G to be a circle of

circumference 1 with coordinates $x \in [0, 1)$ parameterizing the location[17] and changing the normalizing constant $\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2}$ to $\frac{\tau(\sigma-1)}{2-2e^{-\tau(\sigma-1)/2}}$ in formulas (D.2) and (D.3), it can be easily seen that the steady state equilibrium remains uniformly distributed with $\bar{\lambda}(x) = \bar{\omega}(x) = \bar{W}(x) = \bar{T}(x) = 1 \ \forall x \in G$, and $\bar{V}(x)$ constant. The only material difference to the dynamics is that now instead of convolution with a Laplace or Gaussian distribution as the representation of the effect of population on wages or the dynamics of $\nu(x)$ or $\lambda(x)$ respectively, these operators are replaced by convolution with truncated (and recentered and renormalized) Laplace or Gaussian distributions, e.g. $\Gamma(x) = \frac{1}{1-2\Phi(\frac{1}{2})} \frac{k_\Gamma}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma_\Gamma} \exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma_\Gamma^2}(x - \frac{1}{2})^2) 1[0 \le x < 1]$. This reflects the economic structure of the problem: in a finite space, there is a finite maximum trade cost and finite maximum migration cost, and so a minimum impact of one location on another.

Truncation does not change the ability to represent the operators as diagonal with respect to a Fourier basis, though now the result holds by the circular convolution theorem. The Fourier transform of a product is given by the convolution of the Fourier transforms, and so, by a change of variables, in the derivation of $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$, $H(\phi)$ is replaced by $H(\phi) * \text{Sinc}(\phi)$, where $\text{Sinc}(\phi) = \frac{\sin \pi\phi}{\pi\phi}$ is the Fourier transform of $1[-\frac{1}{2} \le x < \frac{1}{2}]$. While this convolution has no simple closed form expression, it is easily calculated numerically by quadrature.

For parameterizations with rapid increase in trade or migration costs over distance, this transformation has minimal effect, as the truncation only affects the far tails. For small trade or migration costs, it increases impact at some frequencies and decreases it at others, reflecting the periodicity induced by the circular shape. Numerical experiments suggest that even for relatively small costs, the impact of this change is limited. As a result, the main impact is on ensuring proper scaling and allowing testing approximate equilibrium computation using a wavelet basis.

To represent the circular convolutions with respect to a wavelet basis, the operators are first written in terms of the distance on a circle with $x' - x$ replaced with arc length along the diameter of the circle: $d(x', x) = \text{mod}(x' - x + \frac{1}{2}, 1) - \frac{1}{2}$ is the distance between points x', $x \in [0, 1)$ on the circumference. For example $\Gamma[\nu](x') = \int_0^1 \Gamma(d(x', x))[\nu(x)]dx$ describes the value of the amenity value $\nu'(x')$ next period at each point $x' \in [0, 1)$ given an initial distribution $\nu(x)$. Construction of wavelet approximations consists of sampling the kernels (e.g. $\Gamma(d(x', x))$) at an evenly spaced grid of $K \times K$ points on $[0, 1) \times [0, 1)$ and applying the discrete wavelet trans-

---

[17]By symmetry, the initial point 0 can be assigned to any arbitrary location.

form to the rows and columns of the resulting matrix. The kernels used in this model are infinitely differentiable at most values of x, y but nondifferentiable at $d(x, y) = 0.5$ due to the finite domain creating a maximal possible level of trade or migration costs at the antipodal location on the circle where counterclockwise or clockwise movements meet. For the exponential trade costs, there is also a point of nondifferentiability at $d(x, y) = 0$. For wavelet representations, there is a tradeoff between vanishing moments to represent the smooth parts parsimoniously and width of the scaling function which creates distortions at nonsmooth points. Although higher order Coiflets will achieve faster rates asymptotically, for finite values of K, lower order Coiflets may yield better performance, which is borne out in numerical experiments. As a compromise, level 3 Coiflets are used in all simulations and evaluations.

Two additional sets of approximations are made beyond those described in Theorem (2). To ensure that perturbations to the population distribution $\lambda(x)$ remain in the space of mean 0 functions, the wavelet representations of operators acting on this space are orthogonalized with respect to the the wavelet representation of the constant function. While for Haar wavelets this demeaning is exact, for other bases it yields a representation which is approximately orthogonal to constants. Rather than defining the exact kernel for $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ and applying the wavelet transform to it directly, because it is composed of convolutions with a Laplace distribution and identity operators, it may be constructed by applying the products and inverses of the wavelet representations of these operators. These operations preserve the convergence rates derived for individual kernel operators, as is demonstrated in the next section.

D.5 Convergence results for compositions of approximated integral operators

The results in section 5.2 demonstrate convergence for operators of the form

$$K[f(y)] = \int_{[0,1)^{d_j}} K(x, y)[f(y)]dy.$$

In practice, some derivatives may be defined by compositions, sums, and other transformations of operators in the form given. Fortunately, these compositions of wavelet approximations of integral operators remain consistent, with convergence rate given by the slowest of the convergence rates of the constituent components. In particular

Lemma 8. *Let $\{K_s\}_{s=1}^{S}$ be compact operators between separable Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{s_1} \to \mathcal{H}_{s_2}$ equipped with sequences of orthogonal projections $\pi^{K_{s_1}}$, $\pi^{K_{s_2}}$ onto K_{s_1} and K_{s_2} dimensional subspaces, respectively, such that $\hat{K}_s := \pi^{K_{s_1}} K_s \pi^{K_{s_2}}$ satisfies $\left\| \hat{K}_s - K_s \right\| \leq \eta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} \to 0$ and $\tilde{K}_s$ is a $K_{s_1} \times K_{s_2}$ approximation satisfying $\left\| \tilde{K}_s - \hat{K}_s \right\| \leq \zeta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} \to 0$ Then, under the condition that the dimensions of the approximations are conformable, linear combinations and compositions converge at the same rate as the constituent operators: i.e. there exist constants such that $\left\| a\tilde{K}_s + b\tilde{K}_t - (aK_s + bK_t) \right\| \leq C(\eta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} + \zeta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}})$, and $\left\| \tilde{K}_s[\tilde{K}_t[.]] - K_s[K_t[.]] \right\| \leq C(\eta_{K_{s_2},K_{t_2}} + \eta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} + \zeta_{K_{s_2},K_{t_2}} + \zeta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}})$.*

Further, suppose K_s maps $\mathcal{H}_s \to \mathcal{H}_s$ and $\pi^{K_{s_1}} = \pi^{K_{s_2}} = \pi^{K_s}$, so $\eta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} = \eta_{K_s}$ and $\zeta_{K_{s_1},K_{s_2}} = \zeta_{K_s}$. Suppose $(I+K_s)^{-1}$ is bounded. Then $\left\| (I_{K_s} + \tilde{K}_s)^{-1}\tilde{K}_t - (I + K_s)^{-1}K_t \right\| \leq C(\eta_{K_s,K_t} + \eta_{K_s} + \zeta_{K_s,K_t} + \zeta_{K_s})$.

Proof. See Appendix F. $\qquad\square$

As a consequence of this lemma, the rates of convergence for wavelet approximations of operators of the form $K[.] = \int K(x,y)[.]dy$ given in section 5.2 continue to hold for compositions, linear combinations, and transformations of the form $(I + K_s)^{-1}K_t$ of the matrix valued approximations of these operators. In particular, when constructed by approximating each operator in inegral form by its wavelet approximation and functions thereof by the corresponding functions of these representations, each subcomponent of the matrix representation of the derivatives of the geography model converges at the rates given in theorem 2, including $\frac{\tilde{d\omega}}{d\lambda} := (I_K - \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dY}\frac{\tilde{dY}}{dw} - \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dT}\frac{\tilde{dT}}{dw})^{-1}(\frac{\tilde{dw}}{dY}\frac{\tilde{dY}}{d\lambda} + \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dT}\frac{\tilde{dT}}{d\lambda}) - \mu(\frac{\tilde{dT}}{dw}(I_K - \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dY}\frac{\tilde{dY}}{dw} - \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dT}\frac{\tilde{dT}}{dw})^{-1}(\frac{\tilde{dw}}{dY}\frac{\tilde{dY}}{d\lambda} + \frac{\tilde{dw}}{dT}\frac{\tilde{dT}}{d\lambda}) + \frac{\tilde{dT}}{d\lambda})$ where a tilde indicates the wavelet approximation of the corresponding operator.

E   Existence of Solutions To Rational Expectations Models with Function-Valued States

In this appendix, I provide a set of sufficient conditions for the existence of a differentiable and stable solution to a recursive model with function valued states, which is the object for which an approximation algorithm is described in the main paper.

Local Existence of an Equilibrium

The requirement that the derivatives of the equilibrium policy operators satisfy the formulas (4.3) and (4.6) in the main paper represents a necessary condition that any differentiable recursive equilibrium solution must satisfy at the steady state. To ensure that an equilibrium characterized by this condition in fact exists and that it is locally stable, conditions beyond those needed to justify the existence of stable derivatives at this point may be needed. Existence of equilibria has previously been demonstrated in dynamic heterogeneous agent models of various types: for models with no aggregate disturbances, see Acemoglu & Jensen (2012), for models with aggregate disturbances see Cao (2016) or Bergin & Bernhardt (1995), and for models with finite numbers of agents, see Mertens & Judd (2012). In the case that an equilibrium of the model may be characterized by the methods used in those papers, our method provides a numerical procedure to characterize a set of local properties. However, it may be desirable, in the case of a wide class of models which may be characterized by the methods in this paper, to provide a general existence argument based on the linearization. As such, we demonstrate that the local existence argument of Jin & Judd (2002) may be extended to the case of infinite dimensional state variables.

In particular, under some additional continuity conditions, an implicit function theorem in Banach spaces (see e.g. Kesavan (2004, Ch. 1)) may be used to show that the conditions provided under which a linearization exists are also sufficient for the existence of an equilibrium with no aggregate shocks in a neighborhood of a steady state. This is a separate task from demonstration of the existence of a steady state equilibrium, which must be shown by other methods, as in Acemoglu & Jensen (2012) or by some other fixed point argument valid in infinite dimensional spaces. In some cases, especially if individual agent decision rules are correspondence valued, the existence of a steady state may require the introduction of auxiliary state variables to generate a Markov structure; this occurs in Acemoglu & Jensen (2012) and Cao (2016), along with, more generally, much of the literature on implicit recursive contracts. As characterizing a steady state is a model-specific task, we will simply require that existence has been verified for the model in question and that the equilibrium conditions which are provided to the linearization procedure are sufficient to characterize an equilibrium.

Given the existence of an equilibrium away from the steady state but with no aggregate shocks, one may prove existence of an equilibrium with "small" aggregate

shocks by applying the implicit function theorem to the deterministic system around $\sigma = 0$ as in Mertens & Judd (2012). Unfortunately, the continuation argument they use to demonstrate existence in the presence of large noise does not directly apply in this case, as it requires compactness of the equilibrium operators, which cannot generally be guaranteed when the state space is infinite dimensional. As such, the approximations computed in this paper should be considered as valid in the "small noise" regime.

Formally, we have the following two theorems: proofs are provided in the next section.

Theorem 5. *Suppose there exist x^*, y^* such that $F(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0) = 0$, F is continuous with uniformly continuous Fréchet derivatives with respect to x, y, x', and y' in a neighborhood $\Omega \times \Omega \subset \mathcal{H}_1 \times \mathcal{H}_1$ of x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, with Fréchet derivatives at this point given by $B = -F_x, -F_y$, $A = F_{x'}, F_{y'}$ such that (B, A) is a Γ-regular operator pair satisfying the conditions of Lemma (5) on existence of Schur decomposition for Γ the complex unit circle and so having generalized Schur decomposition $(B, A) = (Q^*TU, Q^*SU)$. Assume U_{22} is complete and has bounded inverse on $\text{Im } U_2$ and $M(y, x) := F_y y + (F_{x'} - F_{y'} U_{22}^{-1} U_{21}) x : \mathcal{H}_y, \mathcal{H}_x \to \mathcal{H}_2$ has bounded inverse. Then, there exists a neighborhood $\mathcal{N}$ of x^* in $\mathcal{H}_x$ and continuous, Fréchet differentiable operators $g(x)$, $h(x)$ mapping $\mathcal{N}$ to $\mathcal{H}_y$ and $\mathcal{H}_x$, respectively, such that for any $x_0 \in \mathcal{N}$, the sequence $\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}$ defined recursively by $y_t = g(x_t)$, $x_{t+1} = h(x_t)$ satisfies $F(x_t, y_t, x_{t+1}, y_{t+1}, 0) = 0 \ \forall t \geq 0$ and converges in norm to x^*, y^*. Further, $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ are themselves Fréchet differentiable with first derivatives $g_X = -U_{22}^{-1} U_{21}$ and $h_X = (U_{11} + U_{12} g_X)^{-1} S_{11}^{-1} T_{11} (U_{11} + U_{12} g_X)$.*

Remark. Uniform continuity of the derivatives is needed to ensure convergence uniformly over time: a sufficient condition for this would be that F is twice continuously differentiable in $\Omega \times \Omega$. The assumption of continuous Fréchet derivatives could be replaced by strong Hadamard differentiability, with the corresponding weaker result that the policy operators are Hadamard differentiable, using the implicit function theorem for Hadamard derivatives of Craven & Nashed (1982) with only minor changes in the proof. Such a replacement may be necessary for certain classes of equilibrium operators: Craven & Nashed (1982) provide examples of operators which are strongly Hadamard differentiable but not Fréchet differentiable. The same result may also be used to relax the assumption that the inverse of M is bounded, at cost of a weaker

norm, which may be useful for example if M is compact. However, the argument for existence of a stochastic equilibrium in the next theorem does rely on the assumption that M has bounded inverse in a way that cannot be alleviated by using this weaker version of the implicit function theorem. Note that this theorem requires completeness of U_{22}, ruling out cases analogous to those in which there are more stable eigenvalues than predetermined variables, in which there may be indeterminacy. While in these cases at least one equilibrium may possibly still exist, this method of proof does not apply directly.

Proof. See Appendix F. □

Next, one may use the deterministic recursive equilibrium constructed above, along with another application of the implicit function theorem, to demonstrate existence of an equilibrium for σ in a neighborhood of 0, and so with stochastic shocks. The demonstration of existence follows closely the argument (but not the notation) leading to Jin & Judd (2002, Theorem 6).

Theorem 6. *Suppose the conditions of the previous theorem hold, that $\mathbb{E}F(x, y, x', y', \sigma)$ is continuous and three times continuously differentiable with respect to x, y, x', y' in a neighborhood of $(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0)$ and differentiable with respect to σ at $(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0)$, and suppose further that $[F_y, F_{x'}]$ has a bounded inverse from $\mathcal{H}_2$ to $\mathcal{H}_y \times \mathcal{H}_x$ and the operator $[F_y, F_{x'}]^{-1}[F_{y'}, F_{y'}g_X] : \mathcal{H}_y \times \mathcal{H}_x \to \mathcal{H}_y \times \mathcal{H}_x$ has spectrum inside the complex unit circle. Let z satisfy $\mathbb{E}z' = 0$ and have bounded support in $\mathcal{H}_x$. Then, there exists a neighborhood of $\sigma = 0$ and a neighborhood $\mathcal{U}$ of x^* on which there exist bounded functions with bounded derivatives $g(x, \sigma)$, $h(x, \sigma)$ satisfying $g(x, 0) = g(x)$, $h(x, 0) = h(x)$ as defined in the previous theorem and $\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x, \sigma), h(x, \sigma) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x, \sigma) + \sigma\eta z', \sigma), \sigma) = 0$ for all σ and x in this neighborhood.*

Remark. The increase from once to three times continuous differentiability here is imposed in order to ensure uniform continuity of the second derivatives, which enter through a chain rule condition due to the recursive construction. This theorem demonstrates conditions which guarantee the existence of an implicit solution to a set of equilibrium equations. This condition is still weaker than those of Jin & Judd (2002), who require analyticity, albeit mainly for the ability to perform perturbations to arbitrary order. The requirement of bounded support is somewhat restrictive, but without other strong assumptions is very hard to relax: see Jin & Judd (2002) for

discussion. Note that for this result to guarantee existence of an equilibrium, a stationary solution to $\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x,\sigma), h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x,\sigma) + \sigma\eta z', \sigma), \sigma) = 0$ must be a sufficient and not merely a necessary condition for equilibrium. That is, if desiderata for an equilibrium such as transversality or second order conditions are excluded from F, the solution is not guaranteed to satisfy them. Often, auxiliary equations may need to be added to the 'natural' characterization of a solution to fully characterize an equilibrium, as in Cao (2016). However, the result does guarantee existence of a candidate solution for which sufficient conditions may then be verified.

Proof. See Appendix F. $\qquad\qquad\square$

Remark. In the case where the equilibrium conditions are differentiable also in σ, the implicit function characterizes the derivatives with respect to σ.

Corollary. *Let* $\mathbb{E}F(x, y, x', y', \sigma)$ *be Fréchet differentiable in all its arguments (including σ) at* $(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*, 0)$. *Further, suppose σ does not enter into F directly (as opposed to entering via the transition equation $x_2 = h_2(x_2) + \sigma z'$). Then $g(x,\sigma)$, $h(x,\sigma)$ are differentiable in σ and have derivative at $\sigma = 0$ given by $g_\sigma(x, 0) = 0$, $h_\sigma(x, 0) = 0$.*

Proof. This follows from the implicit function theorem used to construct $g(x,\sigma)$, $h(x,\sigma)$ and the fact that, evaluated at $\sigma = 0$

$$\frac{d}{d\sigma}\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x), h(x) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x) + \sigma\eta z'), \sigma) = \mathbb{E}(F_{x'}(x, g(x), h(x), g(h(x)), 0)[\eta z']$$
$$+ F_{y'}(x, g(x), h(x), g(h(x)), 0)g_x(h(x))[\eta z'] + F_\sigma(x, g(x), h(x), g(h(x)), 0)).$$

By the assumption that $\mathbb{E}z' = 0$ and the linearity of the Fréchet derivative for all x, the first two terms are 0. By assumption $F_\sigma = 0$, so the final term disappears as well. $\qquad\qquad\square$

Remark. This result is a direct extension to this setting of the result of Schmitt-Grohe & Uribe (2004) that the first order impact of the standard deviation parameter is 0. However, the result is slightly stronger, as the implicit function theorem used here (as in Jin & Judd (2002)) takes as argument the policy operators as functions of x, and so the implicit function theorem characterizes the partial derivative of the operators $g(.)$ and $h(.)$ in the space of functions with respect to σ. The implication is that the zero first order effect of adding aggregate noise holds not only at the steady

state x^* but also at any other initial condition x, a result which may be useful for extending models with transition dynamics. The assumption that $F_\sigma = 0$ is generally not restrictive, as σ is not a structural parameter but an auxiliary parameter scaling the deviation of the equilibrium away from the nonstochastic steady state. To embed structural assumptions regarding the variance of the shocks, the random element z may be taken to have arbitrary (trace class) covariance operator, which is then scaled by σ.

F Proofs

F.1 Section 5 Proofs

Proof. Of Theorem (1). The proof proceeds in two steps: first, showing that the generalized Schur decomposition is continuous with respect to the approximation, and then showing the policy operators are continuous in the generalized Schur decomposition.

First, note that

$$\|(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) + (I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K) - (B, A)\|_{\mathcal{B}} \leq$$
$$\|(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) - (B^K, A^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}} + \|(B^K, A^K) + (I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K) - (B, A)\|_{\mathcal{B}} =$$
$$\|(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) - (B^K, A^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}} +$$
$$\|(I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K) - (I - \pi^K)(B, A)(I - \pi^K) - (I - \pi^K)(B, A)\pi^K - \pi^K(B, A)(I - \pi^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}} =$$
$$\|(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) - (B^K, A^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}} + \| - (I - \pi^K)(B_C, A_C)(I - \pi^K) - (I - \pi^K)(B_C, A_C)\pi^K - \pi^K(B_C, A_C)(I - \pi^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}}$$
$$= \|(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) - (B^K, A^K)\|_{\mathcal{B}} + \|\pi^K(B_C, A_C)\pi^K - (B_C, A_C)\|_{\mathcal{B}} \leq \zeta_K + \eta_K$$

where the third expression follows from the decomposition of $(B, A) = (B_I, A_I) + (B_{C,}, A_C)$, and the construction of π^K so that $(I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)\pi^K = 0$ and $\pi^K(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K) = 0$.

The consistency of the approximation of (B, A) implies consistency of the components of the Schur decomposition by (3) and (4) and the bound on $\mathrm{dif}(B, A)$. Note that the generalized Schur decomposition of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K)$ and (B_I, A_I) separately is equivalent to (one ordering of) the generalized Schur decomposition of their sum.

More precisely,

$$
\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{Q}_1^{*K} & 0 & , \tilde{Q}_2^{*K} & 0 \\ 0 & Q_1^{*I} & 0 & Q_2^{*I} \end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{T}_{11}^K & 0 & \tilde{T}_{12}^K & 0 & \tilde{S}_{11}^K & 0 & \tilde{S}_{12}^K & 0 \\ 0 & T_{11}^I & 0 & T_{12}^I & 0 & S_{11}^I & 0 & S_{12}^I \\ 0 & 0 & \tilde{T}_{22}^K & 0 & 0 & 0 & \tilde{S}_{22}^K & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & T_{22}^I & 0 & 0 & 0 & S_{22}^I \end{bmatrix},
\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{U}_{11}^K & 0 & \tilde{U}_{12}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{11}^I & 0 & U_{12}^I \\ \tilde{U}_{21}^K & 0 & \tilde{U}_{22}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{21}^I & 0 & U_{22}^I \end{bmatrix}
$$

where an I superscript indicates a component corresponding to the Schur decomposition on $\mathrm{Ker}\,\pi^K$ of (B_I, A_I), is a generalized Schur decomposition of $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) + (I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K)$ corresponding to curve Γ. Note that by operator norm convergence, for sufficiently large K, $\sigma_{\min}(\lambda \tilde{B}^K - \tilde{A}^K + (I - \pi^K)(\lambda B_I-, A_I)(I - \pi^K)) \geq \sigma_{\min}(\lambda B - A) - 2(\zeta_K + \eta_K) > 0$ uniformly in $\lambda \in \Gamma$ by Weyl's inequality and the compactness of Γ and so $(\tilde{B}^K, \tilde{A}^K) + (I - \pi^K)(B_I, A_I)(I - \pi^K)$ is Γ-regular and so the generalized Schur decomposition described exists.

To bound $\|g_K - g_X\|$, note

$$
g_K = -(\tilde{U}_{22}^K)^{-1}\tilde{U}_{21} - (U_{22}^I)^{-1}U_{21}^I = -\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{22}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{22}^I \end{pmatrix}^{-1}\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{21}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{21}^I \end{pmatrix} = -(\tilde{U}_{22})^{-1}\tilde{U}_{21}.
$$

By (3),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\tilde{U}_1 - U_1\| &\leq \|U_1\|\|I - (I + P^*P)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\| + \|P\|\left\|U_2(I + P^*P)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\| \\
&\leq C\|P\| + o(\|P\|) \leq C\frac{2(\zeta_K + \eta_K)}{\delta}
\end{aligned}
$$

for some constant $C < 2 + \epsilon$ for any ϵ, for K sufficiently large, where $\delta > 0$ by the assumption that dif(B,A)>0. As a result, by invertibility of U_{22}, Weyl's inequality, and the triangle inequality, $\left\|-\tilde{U}_{22}^{-1}\tilde{U}_{21} + U_{22}^{-1}U_{21}\right\| \leq C\frac{2(\zeta_K + \eta_K)}{\delta}$ for some constant C for K large enough.

Similarly, we have

$$
h_K = \left(\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{11}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{11}^I \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{12}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{12}^I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{22}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{22}^I \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{21}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{21}^I \end{pmatrix} \right)^{-1} *
$$

$$
\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{S}_{11}^K & 0 \\ 0 & S_{11}^I \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{T}_{11}^K & 0 \\ 0 & T_{11}^I \end{pmatrix} *
$$

$$
\left(\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{11}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{11}^I \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{12}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{12}^I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{22}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{22}^I \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{U}_{21}^K & 0 \\ 0 & U_{21}^I \end{pmatrix} \right)
$$

$$
= (\tilde{U}_{11} + \tilde{U}_{12} g_K)^{-1} (\tilde{S}_{11})^{-1} \tilde{T}_{11} (\tilde{U}_{11} + \tilde{U}_{12} g_K)
$$

Applying the triangle inequality, (3), (4), and convergence of g_K, this implies that for some constant C, for K large enough, $\|h_K - h_x\|_{op} \leq C \frac{\zeta_K + \eta_K}{\delta}$, as claimed. $\qquad \square$

A demonstration that for appropriately smooth functions wavelet representations provide the necessary error control to ensure consistency follows from some standard estimates regarding wavelet coefficients.

Proof. of Theorem (2). First we demonstrate bounds on η_K, the error induced by truncating to a K term wavelet series, using results on wavelet coefficients and operator norm bounds from Johnstone (2013), then bounds on ζ_K, the error induced by calculating the inner products with the wavelet basis by quadrature using quadrature error estimates from Beylkin *et al.* (1991).

First, denoting the blocks of (B_C, A_C) as $K_{r,ij}$, $\max\{\|B_C^K - B_C\|_{op}, \|A_C^K - A_C\|_{op}\} \leq J \max_{r,i,j} \|K_{r,ij}^K - K_{r,ij}\|_{op}$ by definition of operator norm. Because an orthonormal basis is used, $\pi^K (B_I, A_I) \pi^K$ is simply expressed in terms of identity matrices on this space, and so can be evaluated exactly.

The projection of $K_{r,ij}$ onto the space of the first $K_i \times K_j$ wavelet coefficients can be expressed using the inner product with the tensor product over the first $K_i \times K_j$ orthonormal basis functions $\{\phi_k\}_{k=1}^{K_i}$ and $\{\phi_k\}_{k=1}^{K_j}$ as

$$
\pi^{K_i} K_{r,ij} \pi^{K_j} [f(y)] = \sum_{k=1}^{K_j} \sum_{l=1}^{K_i} \langle K_{r,ij}(x,y), \phi_k(x)\phi_l(y) \rangle \langle \phi_k(y), [f(y)] \rangle \phi_l(x)
$$

$$
= \int \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x,y) f(y) dy \text{ where } \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x,y) = \sum_{k=1}^{K_j} \sum_{l=1}^{K_i} \langle K_{r,ij}(x,y), \phi_k(x)\phi_l(y) \rangle \phi_k(y)\phi_l(x)
$$

is the $K_i \times K_j$ term projection of the kernel of the integral operator onto the wavelet basis. Since $K_{r,ij}(x, y) \in \Lambda^{\alpha_{r,ij}}([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})$ and ϕ_k are a standard wavelet basis, we can use norm bounds to control the error in this projection. Sup norm bounds available in Chen & Christensen (2015), show that under the $\alpha_{r,ij}-$Hölder assumption,

$$\left\| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right\|_{L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})} = O((K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i + d_j)})$$

when wavelets satisfying Condition (3) are used. In particular, adapting the proof of their Lemma 2.4, letting

$$\ell_{K_i K_j} = \sup_{f \in L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})} \left\| \sum_{k=1}^{K_j} \sum_{l=1}^{K_i} \langle f(x, y), \phi_k(x)\phi_l(y) \rangle \, \phi_k(y)\phi_l(x) \right\|_{L^\infty} / \| f(x, y) \|_{L^\infty}$$

be the Lebesgue constant for the tensor product wavelet basis

$$\left\| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right\|_{L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})} \leq (1 + \ell_{K_i K_j}) O((K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i + d_j)}),$$

and by their Theorem 5.1 applied in the case of uniform density, $\ell_{K_i K_j}$ is bounded uniformly in K_i and K_j.

By compactness of the domain, we have

$$\int \left| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right| dx \leq C \left\| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right\|_{L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})}$$

$$\int \left| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right| dy \leq C \left\| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right\|_{L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})}$$

almost surely, so by Young's inequality (Johnstone, 2013, Theorem C.26)

$$\sup_{\|f\|=1} \left\| \int (\hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y)) f(y) dy \right\| \leq C \left\| \hat{K}_{r,ij}(x, y) - K_{r,ij}(x, y) \right\|_{L^\infty([0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j})}$$

$$\leq C(K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i + d_j)}$$

As this holds for each r, i, j, we have

$$\eta_K = \max\{ \left\| B_C^K - B_C \right\|_{op}, \left\| A_C^K - A_C \right\|_{op} \} \leq O(J \max_{r,i,j} (K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i + d_j)})$$

90

as claimed, by bounding the operator norm by the Frobenius norm of the $J \times J$ matrix with i, j element equal to the operator norm of the i, j block.

To use this result to bound the number of basis functions needed to obtain a total operator norm error of order ϵ, letting $\bar{\alpha} = \min_{r,ij} \frac{2\alpha_{r,ij}}{d_i+d_j}$, by setting $\{K_j\}_{j=1}^J$ all equal and proportional to $(\frac{J}{\epsilon})^{\frac{1}{\bar{\alpha}}}$, obtain $J \max_{r,i,j}(K_iK_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i+d_j)} = O(\epsilon)$. This results in a basis of size $K = \sum_{j=1}^J K_j$ proportional to $J(\frac{J}{\epsilon})^{\frac{1}{\bar{\alpha}}}$ as claimed.

Next, bound ζ_K, the error induced by approximating each integral operator in (B_C, A_C) by a matrix with entries given by the discrete wavelet transform of $K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t)$. For convenience, define the level of the d_j-tensor product of multiresolution analyses of Im π^{K_j} in each dimension as $\{n_{jp}\}_{p=1}^{d_j}$, and let the total number of basis functions in the tensor product basis satisfy $K_j = \Pi_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{n_{jp}}$.[18] The discrete wavelet transform in one dimension is a unitary mapping on the space spanned by the scaling functions $\phi_{n_j,s} := 2^{-n_j/2}\phi(2^{-n_j}x - s + 1)$ at multiresolution level n_j from vectors whose entries are inner products with these scaling functions to vectors whose entries are inner products with the orthonormal wavelet basis spanning the same space, and in multiple dimensions it maps the tensor product of scaling functions representation to the tensor product of wavelets representation. As the operator norm is unitarily invariant, it therefore suffices to bound the operator norm error in terms of the error in the representation defined in terms of scaling function coefficients. By the compact support, vanishing moment condition, and Hölder exponent bound, Beylkin *et al.* (1991) show by a Taylor expansion argument that if a scaling function with the property $\int \phi(x + \tau)x^m dx = 0$ for all integers $m \leq \alpha + 1$, for some integer τ, is used, then any $f(x) \in \Lambda^\alpha[0, 1]$ satisfies $2^{-n/2}f(2^{-n}(k - 1 + \tau)) = \int f(x)\phi_{n,k}(x)dx + O(2^{-n(\alpha+\frac{1}{2})})$ uniformly in k, and for multivariate functions $f(x^1, \ldots, x^d) \in \Lambda^\alpha[0, 1]^d$, a straightforward extension shows

$$
(2^{-n_1/2} \ldots 2^{-n_d/2})f(2^{-n}(k_1 - 1 + \tau), \ldots, 2^{-n}(k_d - 1 + \tau)) =
$$

$$
\int \ldots \int f(x_1, \ldots, x_d)\phi_{n,k^1}(x_1) \ldots \phi_{n,k^d}(x_d)dx_1 \ldots dx_d + O(\prod_{p=1}^d 2^{-n_p/2} \sum_{p=1}^d 2^{-\alpha n_p})
$$

---

[18]One can avoid restricting to powers of 2 by using a larger number of functions at the finest level, at the cost of more cumbersome notation. The order of all asymptotic results remains the same.

Applying this to $\frac{1}{\sqrt{K_i K_j}} K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t)$ we see that its entries satisfy

$$\left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{K_i K_j}} K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t) - \left\langle K_{r,ij}(x,y), \Pi_{p=1}^{d_i} \phi_{n_{ip}, s+\tau}(x_p) \Pi_{p=1}^{d_j} \phi_{n_{jp}, t+\tau}(y_p) \right\rangle \right|$$

$$= O\left(\left(\prod_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{-n_{ip}/2} \prod_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{-n_{jp}/2} \right) \left(\sum_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{-n_{ip}\alpha_{r,ij}} + \sum_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{-n_{jp}\alpha_{r,ij}} \right) \right)$$

uniformly in s, t. To control the operator norm error induced by this approximation to the matrix of scaling function coefficients, we again use Young's inequality, combined with the fact that the scaling functions $\phi_{n_j, s}$ are rescaled translations of a single bounded and compactly supported function over a regular grid, to bound the operator norm error in the quadrature approximation of the finite projection of $K_{r,ij}(x, y)$ onto a finite tensor product wavelet basis. In particular, denoting $\theta_{ijst} := \left\langle K_{r,ij}(x,y), \Pi_{p=1}^{d_i} \phi_{n_{ip}, s+\tau}(x_p) \Pi_{p=1}^{d_j} \phi_{n_{jp}, t+\tau}(y_p) \right\rangle$ and $\hat{\theta}_{ijst} := \frac{1}{\sqrt{K_i K_j}} K_{r,ij}(x_s, y_t)$ the L^∞ norm error induced by quadrature in the $K_i \times K_j$ term representation of the kernel is equal to

$$\sup_{x,y \in [0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j}} \left| \sum_{s=1}^{K_i} \sum_{t=1}^{K_j} (\theta_{ijst} - \hat{\theta}_{ijst}) \Pi_{p=1}^{d_i} \phi_{n_{ip}, s+\tau}(x_p) \Pi_{p=1}^{d_j} \phi_{n_{jp}, t+\tau}(y_p) \right|$$

As noted in Chen & Christensen (2015, Section 6), by the assumption that the one-dimensional scaling function ϕ has support within a compact interval, with length no greater than $3N + 1$ for a fixed integer N (depending order of the wavelet used), at most $3N + 1$ scaling functions at any fixed level n_j may overlap on any set of positive Lebesgue measure, and so over the $d_i + d_j$-dimensional tensor product space, no point

x, y is covered by more than $(3N + 1)^{d_i + d_j}$ scaling functions.[19] As a result

$$\sup_{x,y \in [0,1]^{d_i} \times [0,1]^{d_j}} \left| \sum_{s=1}^{K_i} \sum_{t=1}^{K_j} (\hat{\theta}_{ijst} - \theta_{ijst}) \prod_{p=1}^{d_i} \phi_{n_{ip}, s+\tau}(x_p) \prod_{p=1}^{d_j} \phi_{n_{jp}, t+\tau}(y_p) \right|$$

$$\leq (3N + 1)^{d_i + d_j} \max_{s,t} \left| \hat{\theta}_{ijst} - \theta_{ijst} \right| \sup_{x,y} \left| \prod_{p=1}^{d_i} \phi_{n_{ip}, s+\tau}(x_p) \prod_{p=1}^{d_j} \phi_{n_{jp}, t+\tau}(y_p) \right|$$

$$\leq (3N+1)^{d_i+d_j} O\Big(\prod_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{-n_{ip}/2} \prod_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{-n_{jp}/2}\Big)\Big(\sum_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{-n_{ip}\alpha_{r,ij}} + \sum_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{-n_{jp}\alpha_{r,ij}}\Big) \prod_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{n_{ip}/2} \prod_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{n_{jp}/2} \sup_x |\phi(x)|$$

$$= O\Big((3N + 1)^{d_i+d_j}\Big(\sum_{p=1}^{d_i} 2^{-n_{ip}\alpha_{r,ij}} + \sum_{p=1}^{d_j} 2^{-n_{jp}\alpha_{r,ij}}\Big)\Big)$$

by boundedness and the definition of $\phi_{n_{jp}, s}$. When the number of basis functions used in each dimension is identical for all dimensions $p = 1 \ldots d_i$ and $1 \ldots d_j$, this term is bounded by

$$O\big((3N + 1)^{d_i + d_j} (d_i + d_j)(K_i K_j)^{-\alpha_{r,ij}/(d_i + d_j)}\big)$$

This is the same order as the projection result, except for a multiplicative constant depending on dimension. Let $\bar{d} = \max_j 2d_j$. Then, if the number of basis functions is set so that $\{K_j\}_{j=1}^{J}$ all equal and proportional to $(\frac{(3N+1)^{\bar{d}} \bar{d} J}{\epsilon})^{\frac{1}{\bar{\alpha}}}$, the above bound along with Young's inequality gives an operator norm error bound bound for each block no greater than $O(\frac{\epsilon}{J})$. With each of J^2 blocks bounded by no more than this quantity, obtain the bound

$$\zeta_K \leq O(\epsilon)$$

exactly as claimed. □

F.2 Appendix A Proofs

Proof. of Lemma (2). We generate Q and U constructively, then verify their properties. Choose a complete orthonormal basis on $\text{Im}\pi_1$, denoted $\{u_{1i}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ and then a

---

[19] The vanishing moments property characterizing Coiflets also requires that the length of the filter defining the scaling function be longer by a factor of 1.5 than the filter for the corresponding standard Daubechies wavelet. This results in an larger constant in front of the quadrature error and the running time of the discrete wavelet transform, but does not affect the rate of convergence.

complete orthonormal basis on the orthogonal complement of $\text{Im}\pi_1$ in $\mathcal{H}_1$, denoted $\{u_{2i}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$. The eigenvectors are not, in general, such a basis, because Ω_1 and Ω_2 are not assumed self-adjoint and so nothing requires their eigenvectors to be orthogonal vectors. Then, U_1 is the operator $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \langle u_{1i}, .\rangle \, e_i^1$ where $\{e_i^1\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ are an arbitrary orthonormal basis on E_1, a space isometrically isomorphic to $\text{Im}\pi_1$, U_2 is the operator $\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \langle u_{2i}, .\rangle \, e_i^2$ where $\{e_i^2\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ are an arbitrary orthonormal basis on E_2, a space isometrically isomorphic to $\mathcal{H}_1/\text{Im}\pi_1$. Likewise, choose a complete orthonormal basis $\{q_{1i}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ for the image of (M_1, G_1) and a complete orthonormal basis for the orthogonal complement of this space in $\mathcal{H}_Y$, $\{q_{2i}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$. We define $Q_1 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \langle q_{1i}, .\rangle \, f_i^1$ and $Q_2 = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \langle q_{2i}, .\rangle \, f_i^2$, for $\{f_i^1\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ and $\{f_i^2\}_{i=1}^{\infty}$ orthonormal bases of F_1 and F_2, spaces isometrically isomorphic to the domains of Q_1 and Q_2 respectively.

Next, we show that these induce an upper triangular decomposition. We define

$$\left(\begin{bmatrix} M_{11} & M_{12} \\ M_{21} & M_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} G_{11} & G_{12} \\ G_{21} & G_{22} \end{bmatrix} \right) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} Q_1 \\ Q_2 \end{bmatrix} M \begin{bmatrix} U_1^* & U_2^* \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} Q_1 \\ Q_2 \end{bmatrix} G \begin{bmatrix} U_1^* & U_2^* \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

Using A.1, we have that $(MU_1^*, GU_1^*) = (M_1 U_1^*, G_1 U_1^*)$ since the range of U_1^* is $\text{Im}\pi_1$, and the restriction of (M, G) to this space is (M_1, G_1). Then, since the domain of Q_2 is orthogonal to $\text{Im}(M_1, G_1)$, we have $(M_{21}, G_{21}) = (0, 0)$, so this is a triangular decomposition.

To characterize the spectrum of the decomposition, first note that $\sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$ and $\sigma(M_2, G_2) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$ by Gohberg et $al.$ (1990) Theorem IV.1.1. (M_{11}, G_{11}) may be written as $(Q_1 M U_1^*, Q_1 G U_1^*) = (Q_1 M_1 U_1^*, Q_1 G_1 U_1^*)$. Consider $\gamma \in \rho(M_1, G_1)$. Then $\gamma M_{11} - G_{11} = \gamma Q_1 M_1 U_1^* - Q_1 G_1 U_1^* = Q_1(\gamma M_1 - G_1)U_1^*$, which has inverse $U_1(\gamma M_1 - G_1)^{-1} Q_1^*$ which is bounded since $(\gamma M_1 - G_1)^{-1}$ is bounded, by definition of the resolvent set, and U_1 and Q_1^* are since they are unitary by construction. So $\sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) \subset \sigma(M_1, G_1) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$.

Characterization of the spectrum of (M_{22}, G_{22}) requires a bit more care. (M_{22}, G_{22}) may be written as

$$(Q_2 M U_2^*, Q_2 G U_2^*) = (Q_2 M(\pi_1 + (I - \pi_1))U_2^*, Q_2 G(\pi_1 + (I - \pi_1))U_2^*)$$
$$= (Q_2 M_1 \pi_1 U_2^*, Q_2 G_1 \pi_1 U_2^*) + (Q_2 M_2(I - \pi_1)U_2^*, Q_2 G_2(I - \pi_1)U_2^*)$$
$$= (Q_2 M_2(I - \pi_1)U_2^*, Q_2 G_2(I - \pi_1)U_2^*) \quad \text{(F.1)}$$

where the second line follows from A.1 and the final line follows from the fact that the domain of Q_2 is orthogonal to the range of (M_1, G_1). Consider $\gamma \in \rho(M_2, G_2)$. By definition of the resolvent, $T(\gamma) := (\gamma M_2 - G_2)^{-1}$ is a bounded operator for all such γ. Then $\gamma M_{22} - G_{22} = Q_2(\gamma M_2 - G_2)(I - \pi_1)U_2^*$. I claim that $U_2 T(\gamma) Q_2^*$ is a bounded inverse of $\gamma M_{22} - G_{22}$. To see this, note that $Q_2^* Q_2$ is equal to $I_{\mathcal{H}_Y / \mathrm{Im}\pi_2}$ and $U_2^* U_2 = I_{\mathcal{H}_X / \mathrm{Im}\pi_1}$. As a result, we have $U_2 T(\gamma) Q_2^* Q_2 (\gamma M_2 - G_2)(I - \pi_1)U_2^* = U_2(I - \pi_1)U_2^* = U_2 U_2^* = I_{\mathcal{H}_X / \mathrm{Im}\pi_1}$, where we use the fact that $U_2 \pi_1 = 0$ since U_2 has domain orthogonal to the image of π_1. By repeating the steps of (F.1), one can show $Q_2(M_2, G_2)(I - \pi_1)U_2^* = Q_2(I - \pi_2)(M_2, G_2)U_2^*$, which ensures that $Q_2(\gamma M_2 - G_2)(I - \pi_1)U_2^* U_2 T(\gamma) Q_2^* = Q_2(I - \pi_2)(\gamma M_2 - G_2)U_2^* U_2 T(\gamma) Q_2^* = Q_2(I - \pi_2)Q_2^* = I_{\mathcal{H}_Y / \mathrm{Im}\pi_2}$, since $Q_2 \pi_2 = 0$. As a result, $\sigma(M_{22}, G_{22}) \subset \sigma(M_2, G_2) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$.

To show the reverse inclusion, note that $\sigma(M, G) = \sigma(QMU^*, QGU^*)$ by unitarity of Q and U. Next, we show that $\sigma(QMU^*, QGU^*) = \sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) \cup \sigma(M_{22}, G_{22})$. Since Δ_+ and Δ_- are disjoint, $\sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) \subset \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$, and $\sigma(M_{22}, G_{22}) \subset \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$, this implies that $\sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_+$ and $\sigma(M_{22}, G_{22}) = \sigma(M, G) \cap \Delta_-$, as claimed. To show this, consider $\gamma \in \rho(M_{11}, G_{11}) \cap \rho(M_{22}, G_{22})$. Then $\gamma QMU^* - QGU^* = \begin{bmatrix} \gamma M_{11} - G_{11} & \gamma M_{12} - G_{12} \\ 0 & \gamma M_{22} - G_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ has bounded inverse given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\gamma M_{11} - G_{11})^{-1} & -(\gamma M_{11} - G_{11})^{-1}(\gamma M_{12} - G_{12})(\gamma M_{22} - G_{22})^{-1} \\ 0 & (\gamma M_{22} - G_{22})^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

and so $\sigma(QMU^*, QGU^*) \subset \sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) \cup \sigma(M_{22}, G_{22})$. Next, suppose $\gamma \in \sigma(M_{11}, G_{11})$ and assume for contradiction that $\gamma \in \rho(QMU^*, QGU^*)$, and so $\gamma QMU^* - QGU^*$ has some bounded inverse $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$. Then $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \gamma M_{11} - G_{11} & \gamma M_{12} - G_{12} \\ 0 & \gamma M_{22} - G_{22} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix}$ and so $a(\gamma M_{11} - G_{11}) = I$, implying that $\gamma M_{11} - G_{11}$ has bounded inverse a, a contradiction. Similarly, if $\gamma \in \sigma(M_{22}, G_{22})$, then if $\gamma QMU^* - QGU^*$ had some bounded inverse $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ then $\begin{bmatrix} \gamma M_{11} - G_{11} & \gamma M_{12} - G_{12} \\ 0 & \gamma M_{22} - G_{22} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ would equal $\begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix}$, implying $(\gamma M_{22} - G_{22})d = I$, which is assumed false. As a result, $\sigma(QMU^*, QGU^*) \supset \sigma(M_{11}, G_{11}) \cup \sigma(M_{22}, G_{22})$, and the claim is shown. $\qquad \square$

Proof. of Lemma (3). Begin by noting that if $P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ is a projector onto an eigenspace

of Ω_1 corresponding to nonzero eigenvalue λ_i (sorted in arbitrary but fixed order), it is also a projector onto an eigenspace of (M_1, G_1) corresponding to the same eigenvalue. By compactness, any nonzero element of the spectrum of Ω_1 is isolated and an eigenvalue, and by equality of spectra corresponds to an isolated point in the spectrum $\sigma(M_1, G_1)$. As a result, one may write the projector onto the eigenspace associated with λ_i of Ω_1 as $P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{\Omega_1} := \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} (\zeta I_1 - \Omega_1)^{-1} d\zeta$, where Γ_{λ_i} is a closed Cauchy curve enclosing λ_i, and the projector onto the space associated with element λ_i of the spectrum of pair (M_1, G_1) as $P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_1,G_1)} := \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} (\zeta G_1 - M_1)^{-1} G_1 d\zeta$ (See Gohberg $et\ al.$ (1990, Ch. I.2 and IV.1)). Since $\Omega_1 = G_1^{-1} M_1$,

$$
P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_1,G_1)} = \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} (\zeta G_1 - M_1)^{-1} G_1 d\zeta = \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} ((G_1 G_1^{-1})(\zeta G_1 - M_1))^{-1} G_1 d\zeta
$$

(F.2)

$$
= \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} ((G_1)(\zeta I_1 - \Omega_1))^{-1} G_1 d\zeta
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{2\pi\iota} \int_{\Gamma_{\lambda_i}} (\zeta I_1 - \Omega_1)^{-1} G_1^{-1} G_1 d\zeta
$$

$$
= P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{\Omega_1}
$$

Compactness also guarantees that the dimension of the image of $P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ is finite (Gohberg $et\ al.$, 1990, Thm II.3.2), and so by equality of spectra, the subspaces associated with points not equal to zero in the spectrum of (M_1, G_1) are all finite dimensional. As a result, we may choose for each i, a finite set of basis vectors, of cardinality k_i, for the space $\mathrm{Im} P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ and a basis for the image of the pair $(M P_{\{\lambda_i\}}, G P_{\{\lambda_i\}})$ which must be of dimension k_i as $G P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ must be of full rank since G_1 is. In particular, as on this space the operator pair has a representation as a pair of $k_i \times k_i$-dimensional matrices, we may without loss of generality use orthonormal basis vectors $\{q_{i1}^1, \dots, q_{ik_i}^1\}$ for the image of $(M P_{\{\lambda_i\}}, G P_{\{\lambda_i\}})$ and $\{p_{i1}^1, \dots, p_{ik_i}^1\}$ for $\mathrm{Im} P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ such that with respect to these bases, M and G are upper triangular with diagonal elements of M and G identically equal to σ_i and τ_i, respectively, where $\frac{\sigma_i}{\tau_i} = \lambda_i$. Such a representation exists by the generalized Schur decomposition for finite dimensional matrix pairs (Stewart & Sun, 1990, Th. VI.1.9). Note that while these basis vectors are orthogonal within each block, in general $\mathrm{Im} P_{\{\lambda_i\}}$ is not necessarily orthogonal to $\mathrm{Im} P_{\{\lambda_j\}}$ for $i \neq j$ as these are oblique, not orthogonal projections.

For Ker π_1, compactness of Ω_2 permits an analogous construction of a countable

sequence of finite dimensional eigenprojections associated to isolated points of the spectrum, with the difference that the projection onto the space associated with point λ_i in the spectrum $\sigma(M_2, G_2)$ is equal to projection associated with nonzero eigenvalue $\frac{1}{\lambda_i} \in \sigma(\Omega_2)$. That is to say, in the notation above, $P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_2, G_2)} = P_{\{\frac{1}{\lambda_i}\}}^{\Omega_2}$ for $\lambda_i \neq \infty$. Since Im $P_{\{\frac{1}{\lambda_i}\}}^{\Omega_2}$ is a finite dimensional subspace of dimension k_i, and since $MP_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_2, G_2)}$ is full rank since M_2 is, we may define sets of orthonormal basis vectors $\{q_{i1}^2, \ldots, q_{ik_i}^2\}$ on the image of $(MP_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_2, G_2)}, GP_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_2, G_2)})$ and $\{p_{i1}^2, \ldots, p_{ik_i}^2\}$ on $\mathrm{Im}P_{\{\lambda_i\}}^{(M_2, G_2)}$ such that with respect to these basis vectors, (M, G) has a representation as a pair of $k_i \times k_i$ upper-triangular Schur matrices with diagonal elements identically equal to the corresponding eigenvalue pair $\{\sigma_i, \tau_i\}$ where $\frac{\sigma_i}{\tau_i} = \lambda_i$.

For the space Im $\pi_1 \backslash \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{p_{11}^1, \ldots, p_{1k_1}^1, p_{21,\ldots}^1\}$, choose choose an arbitrary complete orthonormal basis, say $\{p_1^{1\perp}, p_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}$ and for Im $\pi_2 \backslash \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{q_{11}^1, \ldots, q_{1k_1}^1, q_{21,\ldots}^1\}$, choose a basis $\{q_1^{1\perp}, q_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}$. Likewise, for the space Ker $\pi_1 \backslash \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{p_{11}^2, \ldots, p_{1k_1}^2, p_{21,\ldots}^2\}$, choose choose an arbitrary complete orthonormal basis, say $\{p_1^{2\perp}, p_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$ and for Ker $\pi_2 \backslash \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{q_{11}^2, \ldots, q_{1k_1}^2, q_{21,\ldots}^2\}$ choose a basis $\{q_1^{2\perp}, q_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$. These bases may in general be infinite dimensional and are not necessarily orthogonal to the bases defined for other spaces. To produce the stated decomposition, these bases will be used to construct an orthogonal basis with the desired properties.

To produce the desired decomposition, order the sets of vectors as $(\{p_{11}^1, \ldots, p_{1k_1}^1\}, \{p_{21}^1, \ldots, p_{2k_2}^1\}, \ldots, \{p_1^{1\perp}, p_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots, \{p_{11}^2, \ldots, p_{1k_1}^2\}, \{p_{21}^2, \ldots, p_{2k_2}^2\}, \ldots, \{p_1^{2\perp}, p_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots)$ and $(\{q_{11}^1, \ldots, q_{1k_1}^1\}, \{q_{21}^1, \ldots, q_{2k_2}^1\}, \ldots, \{q_1^{1\perp}, q_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots, \{q_{11}^2, \ldots, q_{1k_1}^2\}, \{q_{21}^2, \ldots, q_{2k_2}^2\}, \ldots, \{q_1^{2\perp}, q_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots)$ and apply Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization to the countable sequences to produce a pair of orthonormal bases $\{\tilde{p}_{11}^1, \ldots, \tilde{p}_{1k_1}^1, \tilde{p}_{21}^1, \ldots, \tilde{p}_1^{1\perp}, \ldots, \tilde{p}_{11}^2, \ldots, \tilde{p}_{1k_1}^2, \tilde{p}_{21}^2, \ldots, \tilde{p}_1^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$ and $\{\tilde{q}_{11}^1, \ldots, \tilde{q}_{1k_1}^1, \tilde{q}_{21}^1, \ldots, \tilde{q}_1^{1\perp}, \ldots, \tilde{q}_{11}^2, \ldots, \tilde{q}_{1k_1}^2, \tilde{q}_{21}^2, \ldots, \tilde{q}_1^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$ of $\mathcal{H}_X$ and $\mathcal{H}_Y$ respectively. We may then define $E_1 = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{p}_{11}^1, \ldots, \tilde{p}_{1k_1}^1, \tilde{p}_{21}^1, \ldots\}$, $F_1 = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{q}_{11}^1, \ldots, \tilde{q}_{1k_1}^1, \tilde{q}_{21}^1, \ldots\}$, $E_1^\perp = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{p}_1^{1\perp}, \tilde{p}_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}$, $F_1^\perp = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{q}_1^{1\perp}, \tilde{q}_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}$, $E_2 = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{p}_{11}^2, \ldots, \tilde{p}_{1k_1}^2, \tilde{p}_{21}^2, \ldots\}$, $F_2 = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{q}_{11}^2, \ldots, \tilde{q}_{1k_1}^2, \tilde{q}_{21}^2, \ldots\}$ $E_2^\perp = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{p}_1^{2\perp}, \tilde{p}_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$, and $F_2^\perp = \overline{\mathrm{Span}}\{\tilde{q}_1^{2\perp}, \tilde{q}_2^{2\perp}, \ldots\}$, and decompose (M, G) into its restrictions to these spaces. We may define P and Q as the unitary operators whose rows are given by the basis vectors. That is, let $P^1 = \sum_{i,j=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{p}_{ij}^1, \cdot \rangle \tilde{p}_{ij}^1$, $Q^1 = \sum_{i,j=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{q}_{ij}^1, \cdot \rangle \tilde{q}_{ij}^1$, $P^{1\perp} = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{p}_i^{1\perp}, \cdot \rangle \tilde{p}_i^{1\perp}$, $Q^{1\perp} = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{q}_i^{1\perp}, \cdot \rangle q_i^{1\perp}$, $P^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{p}_{ij}^2, \cdot \rangle \tilde{p}_{ij}^2$, $Q^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{q}_{ij}^2, \cdot \rangle \tilde{q}_{ij}^2$, $P^{2\perp} = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{p}_i^{2\perp}, \cdot \rangle \tilde{p}_i^{2\perp}$, and $Q^{2\perp} = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle \tilde{q}_i^{2\perp}, \cdot \rangle q_i^{2\perp}$.

I claim that with respect to these bases, (M_{11}, G_{11}), has the desired properties.

The proof of this fact follows by induction. Denote $P_m = \sum_{i,j=1}^{m} \langle \tilde{p}_{ij}^1, . \rangle \tilde{p}_{ij}^1$ and $Q_m = \sum_{i,j=1}^{m} \langle \tilde{q}_{ij}^1, . \rangle \tilde{q}_{ij}^1$. To show (M_{11}, G_{11}) are upper-triangular with respect to this basis, it suffices to show $(I - Q_s)MP_s = (I - Q_s)GP_s = 0$ for all $s \in \mathbb{N}$. It then also follows that $(I - Q^1)MP^1 = (I - Q^1)GP^1 = 0$, and so the $(2,1)$, $(3,1)$ and $(4,1)$ elements of M and G are indeed 0 as claimed. To see this, note that by definition of a closed span, for any $x \in E_1$, for all $\delta > 0$, $\exists s$ such that $\|P_s x - x\| < \delta$. Since M and G are continuous, for any $\epsilon > 0$ there exists $\delta > 0$ such that $\|z\| < \delta$ implies $\|Mz\| < \epsilon$, $\|Gz\| < \epsilon$, and so for any $x \in \mathcal{H}_X$, $\exists s \in \mathbb{N}$ s.t. $\|(I - Q^1)MP^1 x\| = \|(I - Q^1)MP_s x\| + \|(I - Q^1)M(P^1 - P_s)x\| < \epsilon$ and similarly $\|(I - Q^1)GP^1 x\| < \epsilon$.

Begin by showing that the first step of the induction chain holds. By construction of the generalized Schur decomposition for the finite dimensional matrix pair, $\tilde{q}_{11}^1 = q_{11}^1 = \frac{1}{\|G\tilde{p}_{11}^1\|} G\tilde{p}_{11}^1$ and so $(I - Q_1)GP_1 = 0$ and likewise, since $\tilde{p}_{11}^1$ satisfies $M\tilde{p}_{11}^1 = \lambda_1 G\tilde{p}_{11}^1 = \lambda_1 \|G\tilde{p}_{11}^1\| \tilde{q}_{11}^1$, $(I - Q_1)MP_1 = 0$. Next, for arbitrary index $s = k \times \ell$ assume the inductive hypothesis $(I - Q_{s-1})MP_{s-1} = (I - Q_{s-1})GP_{s-1} = 0$. By the Gram-Schmidt process, $\tilde{p}_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}(I - P_{s-1})p_s^1$. Since p_s^1 is a generalized Schur vector of a finite dimensional matrix pair,

$$q_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I - \sum_{j=1}^{\ell-1} \langle q_{k,j}^1, . \rangle q_{k,j}^1)G p_s^1\|}(I - \sum_{j=1}^{\ell-1} \langle q_{k,j}^1, . \rangle q_{k,j}^1)G p_s^1 \ (*)$$

and

$$(I - \sum_{j=1}^{\ell-1} \langle q_{k,j}^1, . \rangle q_{k,j}^1)M p_s^1 = \lambda_k(I - \sum_{j=1}^{\ell-1} \langle q_{k,j}^1, . \rangle q_{k,j}^1)G p_s^1 \ (**)$$

, or, in words, p_s^1 is a generalized eigenvector of the matrix pair on the space orthogonal to previous generalized Schur vectors within the block. Now consider $(I - Q_s)G\tilde{p}_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}(I - Q_s)G(I - P_{s-1})p_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}(I - Q_s)G p_s^1$ by the inductive hypothesis. By $(*)$, $G p_s^1 \in \text{span}\{q_{k,1}^1, \ldots, q_s^1\} \subset \text{span}\{\tilde{q}_1^1, \ldots, \tilde{q}_s^1\}$ so $(I - Q_s)G\tilde{p}_s^1 = 0$, and since by the inductive hypothesis $(I - Q_s)G\tilde{p}_m^1 = 0$ for $m < s$, $(I - Q_s)GP_s = 0$. Similarly, by $(**)$ and the inductive hypothesis, $(I - Q_s)M\tilde{p}_s^1 = 0$, so it is also the case that $(I - Q_s)MP_s = 0$. By induction, $(I - Q_s)MP_s = (I - Q_s)GP_s = 0$ for all $s \in \mathbb{N}$.

To show that diagonals of (M_{11}, G_{11}) are the generalized eigenvalues, note that the sth diagonal elements with respect to this basis are given by $\langle M\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle$ and $\langle G\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle$. Since $\tilde{p}_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}(I - P_{s-1})p_s^1$, $\tilde{q}_s^1 = \frac{1}{\|(I-Q_{s-1})q_s^1\|}(I - Q_{s-1})q_s^1$, $(I - Q_{s-1})M(I -$

98

$P_{s-1}) = (I - Q_{s-1})M$ by triangularity, and Q_{s-1} is idempotent and self-adjoint since it is an orthogonal projection, $\langle M\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}\langle Mp_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle$, and similarly $\langle G\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle = \frac{1}{\|(I-P_{s-1})p_s^1\|}\langle Gp_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle$. By the finite dimensional generalized Schur decomposition, $(**)$ holds, and so $\langle M\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle / \langle G\tilde{p}_s^1, \tilde{q}_s^1 \rangle = \lambda_k$, and so (M_{11}, G_{11}) has the generalized eigenvalues along the diagonals as desired.

To demonstrate that the $(3,2)$ and $(4,2)$ blocks of (M,G) are equal to 0 is equivalent to requiring that $(I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])M[P^1, P^{1\perp}] = (I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])G[P^1, P^{1\perp}] = 0$. Because $(\{p_{11}^1, \ldots, p_{1k_1}^1\}, \{p_{21}^1, \ldots, p_{2k_2}^1\}, \ldots, \{p_1^{1\perp}, p_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots)$ span Im π_1 and $(\{q_{11}^1, \ldots, q_{1k_1}^1\}, \{q_{21}^1, \ldots, q_{2k_2}^1\}, \ldots, \{q_1^{1\perp}, q_2^{1\perp}, \ldots\}, \ldots)$ span Im π_2, we have by A.1 that Im $M[P^1, P^{1\perp}] \subset$ Im $\pi_2 =$ Im $[Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]$ and Im $G[P^1, P^{1\perp}] \subset$ Im $\pi_2 =$ Im $[Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]$ so $M[P^1, P^{1\perp}] = [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]M[P^1, P^{1\perp}]$ and $G[P^1, P^{1\perp}] = [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]G[P^1, P^{1\perp}]$ so orthogonality holds.

The proof of the upper-triangular structure of (M_{22}, G_{22}) proceeds similarly to the above, by induction. Denote $P_m^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^m \langle \tilde{p}_{ij}^2, \cdot \rangle \tilde{p}_{ij}^2$ and $Q_m^2 = \sum_{i,j=1}^m \langle \tilde{q}_{ij}^2, \cdot \rangle \tilde{q}_{ij}^2$. Further, denote $Q_m^u = [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}, Q_m^2]$ the projection onto the set of basis vectors of $\mathcal{H}_Y$ up to $\tilde{q}_m^2$ and similarly $P_m^u = [P^1, P^{1\perp}, P_m^2]$. To show (A_{22}, B_{22}) are upper-triangular with respect to this basis, it suffices to show $(I - Q_s^u)MP_s^2 = (I - Q_s^u)GP_s^2 = 0$ for all $s \in \mathbb{N}$. It then also follows by analogous $\delta - \epsilon$ argument that $(I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}, Q^2])MP^2 = (I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}, Q^2])GP^2 = 0$, and so the $(4,3)$ elements of M and G are 0 as claimed. The proof is essentially identical to that for (M_{11}, G_{11}) except that all vectors are orthogonalized with respect to previous basis vectors, and the generalized Schur form of each matrix pair constructs q_{ij}^2 from M instead of G, as on Ker π_1 the spectrum excludes 0 and so M_2 is guaranteed to be invertible while G_2 is not.

Begin by showing the first step of the induction for (M_{22}, G_{22}). By construction of the generalized Schur decomposition for the finite dimensional matrix pair, $\tilde{q}_{11}^2 = (I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])q_{11}^2 = \frac{(I-[Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])}{\|Mp_{11}^2\|}Mp_{11}^2$ while $\tilde{p}_{11}^2 = (I - [P^1, P^{1\perp}])p_{11}^2$. As shown above, $(I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])M[P^1, P^{1\perp}] = 0$ and so $\tilde{q}_{11}^2 = \frac{(I-[Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])}{\|Mp_{11}^2\|}M\tilde{p}_{11}^2$ and so $(I - Q_1^u)MP_1^u = 0$. Likewise, since $\tilde{p}_{11}^2$ satisfies $(I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])Gp_{11}^2 = \frac{1}{\lambda}(I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}])Mp_{11}^2 = \frac{1}{\lambda}\|Mp_{11}^2\|\tilde{q}_{11}^2$, $(I - Q_1^u)BP_1^u = 0$ also. This shows that the first step of the induction holds: the continuation proceeds as for (M_{11}, G_{11}) except switching the order of M and G. Similarly, the presence of the eigenvalues along the diagonals is shown in a completely analogous manner.

It remains to show that $(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp)$ satisfies $\sigma(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp) \subset \{0\}$. In this, I follow Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Lemma II.3.4) closely. By construction, $(M_{11}^\perp z, G_{11}^\perp z) =$

$(Q_1^\perp M_1 z, Q_1^\perp G_1 z)$ for all $z \in E_1^\perp$. By assumption, G is a bounded operator, so G_1 must be also and so $G_1^{-1} Q_1^\perp G_1$ must be as well. Since the compact operators are a closed ideal within the algebra of bounded operators on a Banach space (see, e.g. (Carl & Stephani, 1990)) and $G_1^{-1} M_1$ is compact by assumption, $G_1^{-1} Q_1^\perp M_1 = G_1^{-1} Q_1^\perp G_1 G_1^{-1} M_1$ is compact also, as is $\Omega_1^\perp := P_1^\perp G_1^{-1} Q_1^\perp M_1 P_1^\perp$, its restriction to $E_1^\perp$. Suppose for contradiction that μ is a nonzero element of $\sigma(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp)$. Then by reasoning entirely analogous to 1, $\sigma(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp) = \sigma(\Omega_1^\perp)$ and so by compactness μ is an isolated point in the spectrum of $\Omega_1^\perp$. Further, $\Omega_1^{\perp *}$ must have $\bar\mu \in \sigma(\Omega_1^{\perp *})$ as a nonzero point in the spectrum, and so by compactness, it must be an isolated point in the spectrum associated with (at least one) nonzero eigenvector, which we will call $x_0 \in E_1^\perp$. The upper triangular decomposition of (M_1, G_1) may be used to show $\Omega_1^{\perp *} = P_1^\perp (G_1^{-1} M_1)^* P_1^\perp$. To see this, note that multiplication of the the upper triangular decomposition of M_1 by the inverse of the upper triangular decomposition of G_1 yields

$$(G_1^{-1} M_1)^* = \begin{pmatrix} G_{11}^{-1} M_{11} & -G_{11}^{-1} G_{11}^{off} G_{11}^{\perp -1} M_{11}^{off} \\ 0 & G_{11}^{\perp -1} M_{11}^\perp \end{pmatrix}^* = \begin{pmatrix} (G_{11}^{-1} M_{11})^* & 0 \\ (-G_{11}^{-1} G_{11}^{off} G_{11}^{\perp -1} M_{11}^{off})^* & \Omega_1^{\perp *} \end{pmatrix}$$

and so $\Omega_1^{\perp *} = P_1^\perp (G_1^{-1} M_1)^* P_1^\perp$ as claimed. As a result, x_0 is also an eigenvector of compact operator $(G_1^{-1} M_1)^*$ associated with eigenvalue $\bar\mu$, and so $x_0 \in E_1^\perp \cap \operatorname{Im} P_{\{\bar\mu\}}^{(G_1^{-1} M_1)^*}$.

However, we know also by F.2 that $\operatorname{Im} P_{\{\mu\}}^{G_1^{-1} M_1} = \operatorname{Im} P_{\{\mu\}}^{(M_1, G_1)} \subset E_1$, and by orthogonality of the decompositions, $E_1^\perp$ is orthogonal to $\operatorname{Im} P_{\{\mu\}}^{G_1^{-1} M_1}$, and so must be a subset of $\operatorname{Ker} (P_{\{\mu\}}^{G_1^{-1} M_1})^*$. Since this is an isolated eigenvalue of an operator on a Hilbert space, Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Prop I.2.5) gives that $(P_{\{\mu\}}^{G_1^{-1} M_1})^* = P_{\{\bar\mu\}}^{(G_1^{-1} M_1)^*}$, and so $E_1^\perp \subset \operatorname{Ker} P_{\{\bar\mu\}}^{(G_1^{-1} M_1)^*}$. This contradicts the previous assertion that there is a nonzero element x_0 in $E_1^\perp \cap \operatorname{Im} P_{\{\bar\mu\}}^{(G_1^{-1} M_1)^*}$ and so the original assertion that there is some $\mu \neq 0$ in $\sigma(M_{11}^\perp, G_{11}^\perp)$.

The proof that $(M_{22}^\perp, G_{22}^\perp)$ satisfies $\sigma(M_{22}^\perp, G_{22}^\perp) \subset \{\infty\}$ is essentially similar to the above, except using $((I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]) M (I - [P^1, P^{1\perp}]), (I - [Q^1, Q^{1\perp}]) G (I - [P^1, P^{1\perp}]))$ in place of (M_1, G_1) and reversing the order of M and G. $\qquad\square$

F.3 Appendix C Proofs

Proof. of Lemma (1). Suppose $h(x,z) := h(x,\sigma) + \sigma z$ is a measurable function from $(\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_z)$, the product space of $\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_z$ equipped with a product sigma field, to $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$. We want conditions on the space, the function, and the sigma fields such that it induces a measurable stochastic process on the product space of $\mathcal{B}_x$. We may assume z is drawn independently of x according to measure μ^z on $(\mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_z)$, and may ask for the initial distribution of x to be given by μ^x. For each x, we can define the pushforward measure on $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ by $\mu_x^{x'}(f(x')) := \mu^z(f(h(x,\sigma) + \sigma z)$ for any $f \in \mathcal{M}^+(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x, \bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ nonnegative measurable functions from x to the real line equipped with the Borel sigma field. If the family $(\mu_x^{x'})_x$ of measures satisfies $x \to \mu_x^{x'}(A)$ is a measurable function from $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x) \to (\bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ for any $A \in \Sigma_x$, then this is a probability kernel and by, e.g, the Ionescu Tulcea extension theorem, the family induces a measurable stochastic process for x_t on the countable product space $\otimes_{t=1}^\infty (\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$.

To show measurability of the family of measures $(\mu_x^{x'})_x$, consider a λ-class argument. The measure μ^z maps the class of measurable rectangles $\{x \in A^1, z \in A^2\}$ for $A^1 \in \Sigma_x, A^2 \in \Sigma_z$ to (nonnegative multiples of) indicators of sets Σ_x, which are therefore measurable. The class of measurable rectangles generates the product sigma field $\Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_z$ and is stable under pairwise intersections. The class of bounded nonnegative functions $f(x,z) \in \mathcal{M}^+(\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_z, \bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ such that $\mu^z f(x,z)$ is $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ measurable can be shown to form a λ-cone (Pollard, 2002, 2.11 Def. <43>) and so by these facts (Pollard, 2002, 2.11 Lemma <44>), μ^z maps $\mathcal{M}^+(\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_z, \bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ to $\mathcal{M}^+(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x, \bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$. In particular, let $h(x,z)$ be $\mathcal{B}_x \times \mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_x \otimes \Sigma_z \to \mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x$ measurable, then $\mu^z(f(h(x,z))$ is $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ measurable for any $f \in \mathcal{M}^+(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x, \bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ and in particular, $x \to \mu_x^{x'}(A)$ is a measurable function from $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x) \to (\bar{\mathbb{R}}, \mathscr{B}(\bar{\mathbb{R}}))$ for any $A \in \Sigma_x$. As a result, $(\mu_x^{x'})_x$ is a probability kernel.

To construct a measurable stochastic process, consider the i.i.d. sequence $\{z_t\}_{t=0}^\infty$ such that z_t each have identical marginal measure μ_t^z and, beginning with initial measure μ^x, construct the sequence of probability kernels on $\otimes_{t=1}^\infty (\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ by iterating the identical kernels defined by $\mu_{xt}^{x'}(f(x')) := \mu_t^z(f(h(x,z))$. This generates a sequence $x_0 \sim \mu_0^x$, $x_t = h(x_{t-1}, z_t)$. By the Ionescu Tulcea extension theorem, the sequence of kernels induces a measurable stochastic process on the countable product space $\otimes_{t=1}^\infty (\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$ with finite dimensional distributions generated by the iterated

probability kernels. Note that the only assumptions made on $(\mathcal{B}_x, \Sigma_x)$, $(\mathcal{B}_z, \Sigma_z)$ and $h(x, z)$ are that $h(x, z)$ is jointly measurable from the product sigma field over x and z to the sigma field over x. In particular, because the probability kernel was constructed explicitly, no topological assumptions needed to be made on the spaces or sigma fields, as are usually required to invoke the Kolmogorov extension theorem. This permits, among other constructions, the use of nonseparable function spaces or non-Borel sigma fields, which may alleviate some difficulties when working in infinite dimensional space.

By measurability of $g(x, \sigma)$ and F, the measurability of the probability kernels defining the conditional distribution of the random variables $y_t = g(x_t, \sigma)$ and $F(x_t, g(x_t, \sigma), h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma z_{t+1}, g(h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma z_{t+1}, \sigma))$ given x and from there the corresponding stochastic processes can be established in an analogous fashion, ensuring that (x_t, y_t) is product measurable and $\mathbb{E}F(x, g(x, \sigma), h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', g(h(x, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z', \sigma), \sigma)$ coincides with the conditional expectation of $F(x_t, g(x_t, \sigma), h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z_{t+1}, g(h(x_t, \sigma) + \sigma \eta z_{t+1}, \sigma), \sigma)$ at time t given $x_t = x$, as claimed. $\qquad\square$

Proof. of Lemma 6. Unitarity of U provides the following facts: since $U^* = U^{-1}$, we have $U^*U = I$. Decomposing U into U_{11}, U_{12}, U_{21}, and U_{22} obtain

$$
\begin{bmatrix} U_{11}^*U_{11} + U_{21}^*U_{21} & U_{11}^*U_{12} + U_{21}^*U_{22} \\ U_{12}^*U_{11} + U_{22}^*U_{21} & U_{12}^*U_{12} + U_{22}^*U_{22} \end{bmatrix} = I = \begin{bmatrix} I_x & 0 \\ 0 & I_y \end{bmatrix}
$$

Where $I_x = \varphi^{X*}\varphi^X$ and $I_y = \varphi^{Y*}\varphi^Y$ are the identity operators on $\mathcal{H}_x$ and $\mathcal{H}_y$ respectively. To see this more formally, consider $U_{11}^*U_{12} + U_{21}^*U_{22}$. It can be written as

$$
\varphi^{X*}U_1^*U_1\varphi^Y + \varphi^{X*}U_2^*U_2\varphi^Y = \varphi^{X*}(U_1^*U_1 + U_2^*U_2)\varphi^Y
$$

$$
= \varphi^{X*}\varphi^Y = 0
$$

Equivalent calculations describe the other identities.

Using these identities we can express

$$
\begin{aligned}
(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^*(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x) &= U_{11}^*U_{11} + U_{11}^*U_{12}g_x + g_x^*U_{12}^*U_{11} + g_x^*U_{12}^*U_{12}g_x \\
&= I_x - U_{21}^*U_{21} - U_{21}^*U_{22}g_x + g_x^*U_{22}^*U_{21} + g_x^*(I_y - U_{22}^*U_{22})g_x \\
&= I_x - U_{21}^*U_{21} + U_{21}^*U_{22}U_{22}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1}U_{21} \\
&\quad + U_{21}^*(U_{22}U_{22}^*)^{-1*}U_{22}U_{22}^*U_{21} + g_x^*I_y g_x - g_x^*U_{22}^*U_{22}g_x \\
&= I_x - U_{21}^*U_{21} + U_{21}^*U_{21} + U_{21}^*U_{21} + g_x^*I_y g_x - U_{21}^*U_{21} \\
&= I_x + g_x^*I_y g_x \\
&= I_x + g_x^{*}g_x
\end{aligned}
$$

As a result, post-multiplying by $(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^{-1}$ and inverting $(I_x + g_x^{*}g_x)$, obtain

$$
(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^{-1} = (I_x + g_x^{*}g_x)^{-1}(U_{11} + U_{12}g_x)^*
$$

$\square$

F.4   Appendix D Proofs

Proposition. *Derivation of $\frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi$: $\frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi = (1 - \mu H(\phi))\frac{\mu H(\phi) - H(\phi)^2}{\sigma - \mu H(\phi) - (\sigma-1)H(\phi)^2} + \frac{\mu}{\sigma-1}H(\phi)$, with $H(\phi) := \frac{(\sigma-1)^2}{(\sigma-1)^2 + \tau^{-2}\phi^2}$*

Proof. $\frac{d\omega}{d\lambda}$ is shown in Equation (D.5) to equal $\frac{dw}{d\lambda} - \mu(\frac{dT}{dw}\frac{dw}{d\lambda} + \frac{dT}{d\lambda})$ which is a composition of convolution operators and their inverses and so can also be expressed as multiplication by the Fourier transform of some function. To construct the Fourier transform of the function, simplify the integrals in equations (D.1),(D.2), (D.3), and (D.4) and denote

$$
H(\phi) = \frac{(\sigma - 1)^2}{(\sigma - 1)^2 + \tau^{-2}\phi^2}
$$

the Fourier transform of the Laplace distribution in the convolution operator

$$
\frac{\tau(1 - \sigma)}{2}\int_G [.]e^{\tau(1-\sigma)|x-z|}dz.
$$

This yields the formulas $\frac{\hat{dw}}{dT} = \frac{\sigma-1}{\sigma}H$, $\frac{\hat{dw}}{dY} = \frac{1}{\sigma}H$, $\frac{\hat{dT}}{d\lambda} = \frac{1}{1-\sigma}H$, $\frac{dT}{dw} = H$. Substituting

into the expressions for partial derivatives, obtain $\frac{\hat{dw}}{d\lambda} = \frac{-\frac{\mu}{\sigma}H + \frac{1}{\sigma}H^2}{1 - \frac{\mu}{\sigma}H - \frac{\sigma-1}{\sigma}H^2}$ and

$$\frac{\hat{d\omega}}{d\lambda}_\phi = (1 - \mu H(\phi))\frac{\mu H(\phi) - H(\phi)^2}{\sigma - \mu H(\phi) - (\sigma - 1)H(\phi)^2} + \frac{\mu}{\sigma - 1}H(\phi). \qquad \text{(F.3)}$$

This is almost the same as Krugman (1996)'s equation (A.44) for this term, but differs slightly due to what appears to be an algebra error in the text. $\qquad \square$

Proof. of Lemma (7). The proof applies the machinery and notation of Stewart (1973). While rates of convergence are obtained, no attempt is made to ensure that these are optimal. First, note that $\gamma_\phi = \|(B_\phi, A_\phi) - (B_I^i, A_I^i)\|_F \to 0$ by assumption, and so all submatrices also converge at least as rapidly in Frobenius norm. Next note that (B_I^i, A_I^i) has generalized Schur decomposition

$$\left(Q^{*\infty} \begin{bmatrix} S_{11}^\infty & S_{22}^\infty \\ 0 & S_{22}^\infty \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11}^\infty & U_{12}^\infty \\ U_{21}^\infty & U_{22}^\infty \end{bmatrix}, Q^{*\infty} \begin{bmatrix} T_{11}^\infty & T_{22}^\infty \\ 0 & T_{22}^\infty \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11}^\infty & U_{12}^\infty \\ U_{21}^\infty & U_{22}^\infty \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

where $(S^\infty, T^\infty) = \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix} \right)$ and $U^\infty = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

Applying standard formulas for policy functions, obtain $\hat{g}_\infty = -U_{22}^{\infty-}U_{21}^\infty = (0, 0)$ and

$$\hat{h}_\infty = (I_2 + \hat{g}_\infty^* \hat{g}_\infty)^{-1}((\begin{smallmatrix} I_2 \\ \hat{g}_\infty \end{smallmatrix})^* U_1^{\infty*} S_{11}^{\infty-1} T_{11}^\infty U_1^\infty (\begin{smallmatrix} I_2 \\ \hat{g}_\infty \end{smallmatrix})) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

As generalized eigenvalues corresponding to the stable subspace are equal to 0 and the generalized eigenvalue corresponding to the unstable subspace is ∞, the measure of subspace separation defined in Stewart (1973), which ensures that Schur subspaces are numerically stable, is given by $\delta = \text{dif}(S_{11}^\infty, T_{11}^\infty, S_{22}^\infty, T_{22}^\infty) > 0$. As a result, by Stewart (1973), Theorem 5.7 and 5.3, $\left\| \sin \Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*}) \right\|_F \leq 2\frac{\gamma_\phi}{\delta - 2\gamma_\phi}$ for γ_ϕ small enough, and similarly for U_2^∞, where $\Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*})$ is the matrix of principal angles between the span of $U_1^{\infty*}$ and $U_1^{\phi*}$. While this does not imply that $\left\| U_1^{\infty*} - U_1^{\phi*} \right\|_F \to 0$, as the span does not uniquely define the basis, it does imply, because $U_2^{\phi*}$ and $U_2^{\infty*}$

have a one-dimensional span and norm 1, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\| U_2^{\phi*} - U_2^{\infty*} \right\|_F^2 &= 2 - 2 \left| \cos \Theta(U_2^{\phi*}, U_2^{\infty*}) \right| \\
&= 2 - 2\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \Theta(U_2^{\phi*}, U_2^{\infty*})} \\
&\leq 2 - 2\sqrt{1 - (\frac{2\gamma_\phi}{\delta - 2\gamma_\phi})^2} = O(\gamma_\phi) \to 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $U_{22}^\infty = 1$ is invertible, the policy function $\hat{g}_\phi = -U_{22}^{\phi-} U_{21}^\phi$ therefore satisfies the bound $\|\hat{g}_\phi - \hat{g}_\infty\|_F^2 \leq O(\gamma_\phi) \to 0$, as claimed.

Further, it is possible to show that for each ϕ, there exists a unitary (2×2) transformation R_ϕ of $U_1^{\infty*}$ such that $\left\| U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi - U_1^\phi \right\|_F \to 0$. Applying the definition of principal angles, for each ϕ there exist unitary matrices $R_\phi^1 = [R_{\phi 1}^1, R_{\phi 2}^1]$ and $R_\phi^2 = [R_{\phi 1}^2, R_{\phi 2}^2]$ such that $[\cos \Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*})]_{11} = \left\langle U_1^{\infty*} R_{\phi 1}^1, U_1^{\phi*} R_{\phi 1}^2 \right\rangle$ and $[\cos \Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*})]_{22} = \left\langle U_1^{\infty*} R_{\phi 2}^1, U_1^{\phi*} R_{\phi 2}^2 \right\rangle$, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\| U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi - U_1^\phi \right\|_F^2 &:= \left\| U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi^1 R_\phi^{2*} - U_1^\phi \right\|_F^2 \\
&= \left\| U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi^1 - U_1^\phi R_\phi^2 \right\|_F^2 \\
&= 2(1 - [\cos \Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*})]_{11} + 1 - [\cos \Theta(U_1^{\infty*}, U_1^{\phi*})]_{22}) \\
&\leq 4 - 4\sqrt{1 - (\frac{2\gamma_\phi}{\delta - 2\gamma_\phi})^2} = O(\gamma_\phi) \to 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

Equivalent results show that for a different unitary transform R_ϕ^Q, $\left\| R_\phi^Q Q_1^\infty - U_1^\phi \right\|_F^2 = O(\gamma_\phi)$. Combining these results and applying the triangle inequality,

$$
\left\| S_{11}^\phi - S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)} \right\|_F := \left\| S_{11}^\phi - R_\phi^Q Q_1^\infty A_\infty U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi \right\|_F \leq O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}})
$$

and

$$
\left\| T_{11}^\phi - T_{11}^{\infty(\phi)} \right\|_F := \left\| T_{11}^\phi - R_\phi^Q Q_1^\infty B_\infty U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi \right\|_F \leq O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}})
$$

also, gives convergence of the generalized Schur components of the finite order matrices along a triangular array to unitary transformations $(S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)}, T_{11}^{\infty(\phi)})$ of the generalized Schur components of the limit pencil. Noting that unitary transformations leave singular values unaffected and that S_{11}^∞ is invertible, S_{11}^ϕ is also asymptotically

invertible, so by Weyl's inequality

$$\left\|S_{11}^{\phi-1} - S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)-1}\right\|_F \leq \left\|S_{11}^{\phi-1}\right\|_{op} \left\|S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)-1}\right\|_{op} \left\|S_{11}^{\phi} - S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)}\right\|_F \leq O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}}).$$

Using the unitarity of R_ϕ and applying the triangle inequality, one can see that

$$\left\|U_1^{\phi*} S_{11}^{\phi-1} T_{11}^{\phi} U_1^{\phi} - U_1^{\infty*} S_{11}^{\infty-1} T_{11}^{\infty} U_1^{\infty}\right\|_F = \left\|U_1^{\phi*} S_{11}^{\phi-1} T_{11}^{\phi} U_1^{\phi} - U_1^{\infty*} R_\phi S_{11}^{\infty(\phi)-1} T_{11}^{\infty(\phi)} R_\phi^* U_1^{\infty}\right\|_F$$
$$\leq O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}}),$$

and so the fact that Schur vectors do not converge does not affect the convergence of the policy function, which is invariant to unitary transformations of these vectors. Finally, defining

$$\hat{h}_\phi = (I_2 + \hat{g}_\phi^* \hat{g}_\phi)^{-1}((\begin{smallmatrix} I_2 \\ \hat{g}_\phi \end{smallmatrix})^* U_1^{\phi*} S_{11}^{\phi-1} T_{11}^{\phi} U_1^{\phi} (\begin{smallmatrix} I_2 \\ \hat{g}_\phi \end{smallmatrix}))$$

the above results and the triangle inequality imply that $\left\|\hat{h}_\phi - \hat{h}_\infty\right\|_F \leq O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}})$.

To show compactness, it suffices to show that the singular values converge to 0. As $g[.]$ and $h[.]$ are block-diagonal, it suffices to show that the operator norm of each block converges to 0. As the operator norm is bounded by the Frobenius norm, each block has operator norm at most $O(\gamma_\phi^{\frac{1}{2}}) \to 0$ and so compactness holds.

(ii) To show that an $h[.]$ is Hilbert Schmidt, $\mathrm{Tr}(h^*h) < \infty$, it suffices to show that the sum of squared singular values converges. As the sum of squared singular values for each block is equal to the square of its Frobenius norm, which is $O(\gamma_\phi)$ for large $|\phi|$, convergence holds so long as $\sum_{\phi=n}^{\infty} \gamma_\phi < \infty$ for some finite n. Superlinear convergence $\gamma_\phi = O(|\phi|^{-(1+\epsilon)})$ for some $\epsilon > 0$ is sufficient for this sum to be finite. $\square$

Proof. of Lemma (8). The first statements follow by the triangle inequality and the assumed rates. For the latter,

$$\left\|(I_{K_s} + \hat{K}_s)^{-1}\hat{K}_t - (I + K_s)^{-1}K_t\right\| \leq \left\|\hat{K}_t - K_t\right\| \left\|(I + K_s)^{-1}\right\| + \left\|((I_{K_s} + \hat{K}_s)^{-1} - (I + K_s)^{-1})\hat{K}_t\right\|$$
$$\leq (a) + (b)$$

$$(a) \quad \leq \quad C\eta_{K_s,K_t} \to 0$$

by assumption.

$$
\begin{aligned}
(b) \quad &\leq \quad \left\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|(I-(I+K_s)(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1})\hat{K}_t\right\| \\
&= \quad \left\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|(I_{K_s}-(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}+(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s-(I+K_s))(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1})\hat{K}_t\right\| \\
&= \quad \left\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|(0+(I_{K_s}-I+(\hat{K}_s-K_s))(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1})\hat{K}_t\right\| \\
&= \quad \left\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|(\hat{K}_s-K_s)(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}\hat{K}_t\right\| \\
&\leq \quad \left\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|\hat{K}_s-K_s\right\| \left\|(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}\right\| \left\|\hat{K}_t\right\| \\
&\leq \quad C\eta_{K_s} \to 0
\end{aligned}
$$

where we have used the orthogonality of projections and that $\left\|(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}\right\|$ is bounded for large enough K_s because $\|(I+K_s)^{-1}\|$ is, with result that $\left\|(I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}\hat{K}_t - (I+K_s)^{-1}K_t\right\|$ $C(\eta_{K_s,K_t}+\eta_{K_s})$

By an essentially identical argument, we similarly have

$$\left\|(I_{K_s}+\tilde{K}_s)^{-1}\tilde{K}_t - (I_{K_s}+\hat{K}_s)^{-1}\hat{K}_t\right\| \leq C(\zeta_{K_s,K_t}+\zeta_{K_s})$$

and so

$$\left\|(I_{K_s}+\tilde{K}_s)^{-1}\tilde{K}_t - (I+K_s)^{-1}K_t\right\| \leq C(\eta_{K_s,K_t}+\eta_{K_s}+\zeta_{K_s,K_t}+\zeta_{K_s})$$

$\square$

F.5 Appendix E Proofs

Proof. of Theorem 5. Define the space of potential sequences of (aggregate) states $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ as the space of sequences of deviations $\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}$ such that $\{x_t+x^*, y_t+y*\}_{t=0}^{\infty} \in \mathcal{H}_1 = \mathcal{H}_x \times \mathcal{H}_y$ from time 0 to ∞ endowed with the norm $\|\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}\|_{\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)} = \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \|(x_t-x^*, y_t-y^*)\|_{\mathcal{H}_1}$ having finite norm. Define also $\ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)$ as the subspace of $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ consisting of sequences $\{y_0, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=1}^{\infty}\}$, that is, excluding x_0, endowed with

the relative topology. These are Banach spaces since each element of a sequence is a member of a Banach space and the space of norm summable sequences is complete. We define an equilibrium as a sequence $\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty \in \ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ satisfying $F(x_t + x^*, y_t + y^*, x_{t+1} + x^*, y_{t+1} + y^*, 0) = 0 \ \forall t \geq 0$ and endow the space of norm-summable sequences in $\mathcal{H}_2$ with the $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2)$ norm $\|\{z_t\}_{t=0}^\infty\|_{\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2)} = \sum_{t=0}^\infty \|z_t\|_{\mathcal{H}_2}$, making it also a Banach space, and the operator $F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty) = \{F(x_t + x^*, y_t + y^*, x_{t+1} + x^*, y_{t+1} + y^*, 0)\}_{t=0}^\infty$ a map from $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1) \to \ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2)$ (where boundedness follows if $F(.,.,.,.,0)$ is bounded from $\mathcal{H}_1 \times \mathcal{H}_1$ endowed with norm $\|x, y\|_{\mathcal{H}_1} + \|x', y'\|_{\mathcal{H}_1}$ is bounded). By assumption $\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty = \{0, 0\}_{t=0}^\infty$ satisfies $F^\infty(\{0, 0\}_{t=0}^\infty) = 0$. F^∞ is continuous on an $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ neighborhood of $\{0, 0\}_{t=0}^\infty$ since for any pair of sequences $(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_i$, $(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_j$, we have $\|F^\infty((\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_i) - F^\infty((\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_j)\|_{\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2)} = \sum_{t=0}^\infty \|F(x_t^i + x^*, y_t^i + y^*, x_{t+1}^i + x^*, y_{t+1}^i + y^*, 0) - F(x_t^j + x^*, y_t^j + y^*, x_{t+1}^j + x^*, y_{t+1}^j + y^*, 0)\|_{\mathcal{H}_2}$ which is bounded by the $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ norm of the difference in arguments times the modulus of uniform continuity of $F(x_t + x^*, y_t + y^*, x_{t+1} + x^*, y_{t+1} + y^*, 0)$, which is finite in a bounded neighborhood of $0, 0, 0, 0$ due to continuity of the Fréchet derivatives of F. Split the arguments of F^∞ into $(x_0, s) \in \mathcal{H}_x \times \ell_{y_0}^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ and define $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{\partial x_0}$ and $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{\partial s}$ as the partial Fréchet derivatives of F^∞ with respect to x_0 and s, respectively. These exist and are continuous at $\{x^*, y^*\}_{t=0}^\infty$. This is easily seen for $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{\partial x_0} = \{F_x(x^*, y^*, x^*, y^*), 0, 0, 0, ...\}$ since F_x is continuous by assumption. For s, this is a little less straightforward: its rows are given by

$$[\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}]_0 = [F_y(x_0 + x^*, y_0 + y^*, x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*)$$
$$F_{x'}(x_0 + x^*, y_0 + y^*, x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*) \quad F_{y'}(x_0 + x^*, y_0 + y^*, x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*) \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad \dots]$$

$$[\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}]_1 = [\begin{matrix} 0 & F_x(x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*, x_2 + x^*, y_2 + y^*) \\ F_y(x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*, x_2 + x^*, y_2 + y^*) & F_{x'}(x_1 + x^*, y_1 + y^*, x_2 + x^*, y_2 + y^*) \end{matrix}$$
$$F_{y'}(x_1 + x^*, y_1, x_2 + x^*, y_2) \quad \dots]$$

$$
[\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}]_2 = [\ 0\ \ 0\ \ 0\ \ F_x(x_2 + x^*, y_2 + y^*, x_3 + x^*, y_3 + y^*)
$$

$$
F_y(x_2 + x^*, y_2 y^*, x_3 + x^*, y_3 + y^*)\quad F_{x'}(x_3 + x^*, y_3 + y^*, x_4 + x^*, y_4 + y^*)
$$

$$
F_{y'}(x_3 + x^*, y_3, x_4 + x^*, y_4)\quad \ldots]
$$

etc.

It is a linear operator mapping sequences $s = \{y_0, x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2, \ldots\} \in \ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)$ to $\ell^\infty(\mathcal{H}_2)$, as each block is bounded and each row consists of a finite set of blocks. Continuity of this operator (with respect to operator norm on the space $\mathcal{L}(\ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1) \to \ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2))$) is given by bounding

$$
\sup_{\|s\|_{\ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)}=1} \|[\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_i}{\partial s} - \frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_j}{\partial s}]s\|_{\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2)}
$$

which, if $(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_i$ and $(\{x_t, y_t\}_{t=0}^\infty)_j$ are in the neighborhood over which the Fréchet derivatives are uniformly continuous, is less than the sum of the moduli of uniform continuity of F_x, F_y, $F_{x'}$, and $F_{y'}$ (which is by assumption finite) times the $\ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ distance between the sequences. This inequality holds since for any row of $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{\partial s}$, only the set of elements of the sequence corresponding to times t and $t+1$ enters into the value of the operator.

Finally, to apply the implicit function theorem to F^∞ to solve for s as a function of x_0, we must show that $\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{0,0\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}$ is invertible. To do this, we show that it is surjective and injective. We prove that it is surjective constructively, by constructing, for any $\{a_i\}_{i=0}^\infty \in \ell^\infty(\mathcal{H}_2)$ an element $s \in \ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)$ such that $\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{0,0\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}s = \{a_i\}_{i=0}^\infty$. We may construct s recursively, using g_X and h_X as defined in the theorem to solve for the values of y, x', and y' consistent with values of x and y at previous times. To find the starting value, we solve $a_0 = F_y y_0 + F_{x'} x_1 + F_{y'} y_1$ by finding y_0 and x_1 consistent with a_0 under the assumption that y_1 may be constructed by the law of motion given by g_X, permitting all subsequent time periods to be solved for recursively. That is, we find y_0, x_1 solving $a_0 = F_y y_0 + F_{x'} x_1 + F_{y'} g_X x_1 = M(y_0, x_1)$. By invertibility of M, we may define $(y_0, x_1) = M^{-1} a_0$ and choose $y_1 = g_X x_1$ so that the first row of $\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{0,0\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}[\{y_0, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=1}^\infty\}]$ equals a_0 by construction. To ensure that the next

row holds, with x_1 and $y_1 = g_X x_1$ given, we must solve $a_1 = [\ F_x \quad F_y\ ][\ {}^{x_1}_{g_X x_1}\ ] +$

$[\ F_{x'} \quad F_{y'}\ ][\ {}^{x_2}_{y_2}\ ]$. This equation has 'fundamental solution' for $a_2 = 0$ given by the

recursive update rule $x_2 = h_X x_1$ and $y_2 = g_X h_X x_1$. To find a general solution,

we may add to this values solving $a_1 = [\ F_{x'} \quad F_{y'}\ ][\ {}^{\tilde{x}_2}_{g_X \tilde{x}_2}\ ]$. Applying the Schur

decomposition, this equals $a_1 = Q^*[\ {}^{S_{11}}_{0}\ {}^{S_{12}}_{S_{22}}\ ][\ {}^{(U_{11} + U_{12}g_X)\tilde{x}_2}_{(U_{21} + U_{22}g_X)\tilde{x}_2}\ ] = Q_1^* S_{11}(U_{11} +$

$U_{12}g_X)\tilde{x}_2$ using that $U_{21} + U_{22}g_X = 0$ by construction. Q_1^* is invertible by unitarity of Q, S_{11} is invertible by Γ-regularity of the derivative pair, and $(U_{11}+U_{12}g_X)$ is invertible by Lemma 1 in the main text, so $\tilde{x}_2 = (U_{11} + U_{12}g_X)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}Q_1 a_1$ and $x_2 = h_X x_1 + \tilde{x}_2$ and $y_2 = g_X h_X x_1 + g_X \tilde{x}_2$. We may then iterate these forward to find a fundamental solution to the next row, and then add $\tilde{x}_3 = (U_{11}+U_{12}g_X)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}Q_1 a_2$ and $g_X \tilde{x}_3$ to the fundamental solution to find x_3 and y_3. This process can be continued indefinitely, resulting in the solution $s(\{a_t\}_{t=0}^\infty) = \{y_0, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=1}^\infty\}$ given by $(y_0, x_1) = M^{-1}a_0$, $x_k = h_X^{k-1}x_1 + \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} h_X^{k-1-j}(U_{11}+U_{12}g_X)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}Q_1 a_j$ for all $k > 1$ and $y_k = g_X x_k$ for all $k > 0$. We may demonstrate that $s(\{a_t\}_{t=0}^\infty) \in \ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)$ since

$$\sum_{k=1}^\infty \|x_k\|_{\mathcal{H}_X} \leq \|(M^{-1}a_0)\| \sum_{k=0}^\infty \|h_X^k\| + \|(U_{11}+U_{12}g_X)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}Q_1\|(\sum_{j=0}^\infty \|h_X^j\|)\sum_{k=1}^\infty \|a_k\| < \infty$$

since $\|h_X^k\|$ must, since its eigenvalues are bounded in modulus by 1, eventually be of norm less than one, and so $\sum_{j=1}^\infty \|h_X^j\|$ is a geometric series with a finite bound. Similarly, $\sum_{k=0}^\infty \|y_k\|_{\mathcal{H}_X} \leq \|y_0\| + \|g_X\|\sum_{k=1}^\infty \|x_k\|_{\mathcal{H}_X} < \infty$. So, we have shown that $\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{x^*, y^*\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}$ is surjective map in $\mathcal{L}(\ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1) \to \ell^1(\mathcal{H}_2))$.

To show invertibility, by the bounded inverse theorem it is sufficient to show that this map is unique. We prove this by contradiction. First, note that completeness of U_{22} and the restriction of the domain of $\frac{\partial F^\infty(\{0,0\}_{t=0}^\infty)}{\partial s}$ to $\ell^1_{y_0}(\mathcal{H}_1)$ rule out other 'recursive' solutions taking the same form as above but for different generalized Schur decompositions. First, completeness ensures a unique solution to $U_{21} + U_{22}g_X = 0$. Further, for any generalized Schur decomposition generated by Cauchy curve Γ generating a Riesz projector which projects onto a subspace other than that generated by Γ equal to the complex unit circle, one of two issues may occur. One possibility is that there exists a spectral subspace corresponding to an element of the spectrum

outside of the unit circle, in which case T_{11} has an element of its spectrum with modulus greater than one, and so the sequence $\{x_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}$ defined by x_0 given, $x_{t+1} = h_X x_t$ does not converge to 0 for each value of x_0, by Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Theorem IV.3.1) and so a fortiori is not in $\ell_{y_0}^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$. The other possibility is that no elements of the spectrum from outside the unit circle are brought inside Γ, but it shrinks so that some spectral subspace corresponding to element of the spectrum with modulus less than one, call it $\mathfrak{M}$, is brought outside of Γ, in which case, U_{22} which was an invertible linear operator from $\mathcal{H}_y$ to $\mathcal{H}_{12}$ must now have range space $\mathcal{H}_{12} \oplus \mathfrak{M}$ and the same domain, so it cannot be invertible. The case where an element of the spectrum has modulus exactly one is ruled out by assumption. So, only one solution of the posited recursive form exists. Next we must show that no solution other than the recursive one exists.

To show $\frac{\partial F^{\infty}}{\partial s}$ is injective, simply show that $\frac{\partial F^{\infty}}{\partial s} s = 0$ implies $s = \{y_0, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=1}^{\infty}\} = 0$. Suppose not. Then, there is some t such that either $x_t \neq 0$ or $y_t \neq 0$. Consider the first such time t, and suppose that $t \geq 1$. Then $F_{x'} x_t + F_{y'} y_t = 0$ imposes

$$\begin{bmatrix} S_{11}(U_{11} x_t + U_{12} y_t) + S_{12}(U_{21} x_t + U_{22} y_t) \\ S_{22}(U_{21} x_t + U_{22} y_t) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

If $y_t = g_X x_t$, then the second row cancels and $x_t = 0$. Instead, it must be that $(U_{21} x_t + U_{22} y_t) \in Ker(S_{22})$, where this null space is potentially nontrivial. If S_{22} is complete, $y_t = g_X x_t$, the second row cancels, and $x_t = y_t = 0$. If it is not, there may be some non-zero $z_t \in Null(S_{22})$ such that $U_{21} x_t + U_{22} y_t = z_t$, and so $y_t = U_{22}^{-1} U_{21} x_t + U_{22}^{-1} z_t = g_X x_t + U_{22}^{-1} z_t$, and, plugging this into the first row, obtain $x_t = (U_{11} + U_{12} g_X)^{-1}[U_{11} U_{22}^{-1} + S_{11}^{-1} S_{12}] z_t$, which we write as $x_t = m_Z z_t$ and so the value of x_t, y_t must be of this form. We may then consider what this implies for x_{t+1}, y_{t+1}. We then have $F_x x_t + F_y y_t + F_{x'} x_{t+1} + F_{y'} y_{t+1} = 0$ imposes

$$\begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ 0 & T_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} ((U_{11} + U_{12} g_X) m_Z + U_{12} U_{22}^{-1}) z_t \\ z_t \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ 0 & S_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} U_{11} x_{t+1} + U_{12} y_{t+1} \\ U_{21} x_{t+1} + U_{22} y_{t+1} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Values of $(U_{21} x_{t+1} + U_{22} y_{t+1})$ solving the second equation $T_{22} z_t = S_{22}(U_{21} x_{t+1} + U_{22} y_{t+1})$ exist so long as the range space of S_{22} contains $T_{22} z_t$, in which case multiple solutions exist, given by a minimum norm solution $S_{22}^*(S_{22} S_{22}^*)^{-1} T_{22} z_t$ plus some element of the null space of S_{22}, which we may call ϵ_{t+1}, and so for some

111

$\epsilon_{t+1} \in Ker(S_{22})$ $z_{t+1} = S_{22}^*(S_{22}S_{22}^*)^{-1}T_{22}z_t + \epsilon_{t+1}$ is a solution, and so we have $y_{t+1} = g_X x_{t+1} + U_{22}^{-1} z_{t+1}$. We may then solve the first row for x_{t+1} to obtain $x_{t+1} = m_Z z_{t+1} + (h_X m_Z + (U_{11} + U_{12}g_X)^{-1}S_{11}^{-1}T_{11}U_{12}U_{22}^{-1} + T_{12})z_t$. Repeating this process indefinitely, $y_{t+k} = g_X x_{t+k} + U_{22}^{-1} z_{t+k}$ where $z_{t+k} = S_{22}^*(S_{22}S_{22}^*)^{-1}T_{22}z_{t+k-1} + \epsilon_{t+k}$ for some $\epsilon_{t+k} \in Ker(S_{22})$, and x_{t+k} is given by $m_Z z_{t+k}$ plus terms in z_{t+i} for i from 0 to $k-1$. We therefore have a sequence which at all t has leading term defined by z_{t+k}, which satisfies $T_{22}^{-1}S_{22}z_{t+k} = z_{t+k-1}$ for all $k \geq 1$. By construction of the generalized Schur decomposition, (T_{22}, S_{22}) has spectrum strictly bounded outside the unit circle, and so the series $T_{22}^{-1}S_{22}z_{t+k} = z_{t+k-1}$ declines exponentially fast toward zero when run backwards in time, and so since $z_t \neq 0$, this means that the series must grow exponentially in norm over time. As a result, this conjectured solution is not in $\ell_{y_0}^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$. It now suffices to rule out the case where the first nonzero element is y_0. If this is the case, the first row requires $y_1 = g_X x_1 + U_{22}^{-1} z_1$ for $z_1 = S_{22}^*(S_{22}S_{22}^*)^{-1}T_{22}y_0 + \epsilon_1$, $\epsilon_1 \in Ker(S_{22})$ and $x_1 = (U_{11} + U_{12}g_X)^{-1}[S_{11}^{-1}(T_{11}U_{12} + T_{12}U_{22})T_{22}^{-1}S_{22} - S_{11}^{-1}S_{12} - U_{12}U_{22}^{-1}]z_1$, and so we have the same form as before, and so again this results in an explosive series. So, the kernel of $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{ds}$ on $\ell_{y_0}^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ consists only of 0, and so $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{ds}$ has a unique linear inverse, which is bounded so long as F_X^{-1} is.

Combining these results, the implicit function theorem on Banach spaces applies, and there exists a neighborhood of $x_0 = 0$ around which there exists for every x_0 in this neighborhood a sequence $s(x_0) = \{y_0(x_0), \{x_t(x_0), y_t(x_0)\}_{t=1}^\infty\}$ such that x_0, $s(x_0)$ satisfy the equilibrium conditions for all t. Further, this function is continuous and differentiable, with inverse given by $-(\frac{\partial F^\infty}{ds})^{-1}\frac{\partial F^\infty}{dx_0}$. To characterize the result of applying $(\frac{\partial F^\infty}{ds})^{-1}$ to $\frac{\partial F^\infty}{dx_0} = \{F_x, 0, 0, 0, \ldots\}$, we may note that $M^{-1}(-F_x)$ is given by the values of (y_0, x_1) solving $F_x + F_y y_0 + F_{x'}x_1 + F_{y'}g_X x_1 = 0$, which, by generalized Schur decomposability and the invertibility of U_{22}, is solved uniquely by the operators $y_0 = g_X$, $x_1 = h_X$. Applying this and the formula for subsequent values of x_t and y_t, we obtain the recursive form $\frac{\partial x_k(x_0)}{\partial x_0} = h_X^k$ for all $k \geq 1$ and $\frac{\partial y_k(x_0)}{\partial x_0} = g_X h_X^k$ for all $k \geq 0$, as claimed.

The above result showed that a local equilibrium exists for all starting values local to the steady state, and its derivatives follow the given recursive forms. It remains to show that the equilibrium itself is recursive. To see this, note that the implicit function theorem implies that the function $s(x_0)$ is unique. Further, we have that the function given by the restriction of F^∞ to $t \geq 1$, $F_{t\geq1}^\infty(x_1, \{y_1, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=2}^\infty\}) = \{F(x_t + x^*, y_t + y^*, x_{t+1} + x^*, y_{t+1} + y^*, 0)\}_{t=1}^\infty$, has the property that the pair solving x_0, $s(x_0)$ to

$F^\infty(x_0, s) = 0$ has restriction to $t \geq 1$ $x_1(x_0)$, $\{y_1(x_0), \{x_t(x_0), y_t(x_0)\}_{t=2}^\infty\}$ which is a solution to $F_{t\geq 1}^\infty(x_1, \{y_1, \{x_t, y_t\}_{t=2}^\infty\}) = 0$. But since $F_{t\geq 1}^\infty$ is identical to $F^\infty = \{F(x_t + x^*, y_t + y^*, x_{t+1} + x^*, y_{t+1} + y^*, 0)\}_{t=0}^\infty$, by the implicit function theorem applied to $F_{t\geq 1}^\infty$, for any x_1 in a neighborhood of x^*, there is a unique $\{\tilde{y}_1(x_1), \{\tilde{x}_t(x_1), \tilde{y}_t(x_1)\}_{t=2}^\infty\}$ such that $F_{t\geq 1}^\infty(x_1, \{y_1(x_1), \{x_t(x_1), y_t(x_1)\}_{t=2}^\infty\}) = 0$, and this is unique and equal to $s(x_1)$. As a result, for $x_1 = x_1(x_0)$, the function $\tilde{x}_2(x_1)$ for $F_{t\geq 1}^\infty = 0$ must equal both $x_2(x_0)$ and $x_1(x_1(x_0))$. Since this may be repeated infinitely often, we have that, for x_0 in a neighborhood of 0, the solution to $F^\infty = 0$ satisfies $x_t(x_0) = x_1(x_1(...(x_1(x_0))))$, i.e., the function x_1 applied t times. So, we are justified in defining the function $h(x)$ (on values of $x \in \mathcal{H}_x$ instead of deviations) as $x_1(x - x^*) + x^*$, which may be applied recursively to find $x_t(x_0)$. Similarly, by uniqueness and recursion $y_t(x_0) = y_0(x_t(x_0))$ for all t, and so we may define $g(x)$ as $y_1(x - x^*) + y^*$. So, for any x_0 in $\mathcal{N}$, there exists a recursion $x_{t+1} = h(x_t)$, $y_t = g(x_t)$ setting $F(x_t, y_t, x_{t+1}, y_{t+1}) = 0$ $\forall t \geq 0$, with the claimed properties.

The claim that this recursion converges back to steady state follows from the fact that $\{x_0, s(x_0)\} \in \ell^1(\mathcal{H}_1)$ by construction. $\qquad \square$

The following minor result, possibly not new, ensures that the paths induced by products of sequences of linear operators which converge, such as when the chain rule is applied to find derivatives with respect to initial conditions of an object constructed recursively along a convergent sequence, exhibit the stability properties of their limiting operator. It is used to ensure that the invertibility conditions required for the implicit function theorem hold even along sequences starting away from the steady state.

Lemma 9. *Let $\{A_k\}_{k=1}^\infty$ be a sequence of operators in $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{H})$ uniformly bounded by $C < \infty$ and converging in operator norm to a fixed limit A such that $\Sigma(A)$ is strictly inside the complex unit circle Γ. Then $\|\prod_{k=1}^n A_k\| \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$, and furthermore this convergence is at an exponential rate.*

Remark. Under the conditions of the lemma, $\|A^n\| \to 0$ exponentially by Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Thm. IV.3.1), and for k sufficiently large, $\|A_k^n\| \to 0$ also, so this should be interpreted as saying that the stability of recursively constructed sequences is unaffected by changes along the sequence which are eventually negligible. Note that this statement is trivial also for sequences of normal operators, for which the operator norm is given by the spectral radius and so $\|\prod_{k=1}^n A_k\| \leq \prod_{k=1}^n \|A_k\| \searrow 0$.

Proof. Convergence is given by a 'blocking'-type argument. While the elements of $\prod_{k=1}^{n} A_k$ converge to A, this convergence does not imply that the product of the element converges to the product of the limit. Instead, the sequence may be separated into blocks $i = 1 \ldots m$ of finite length J_i, which, since a convergent sequence is Cauchy, each block contains a set of elements of diameter going to 0. Since asymptotically the spectrum of A_k is strictly inside the unit circle, for large enough i and for long enough J_i, the j_i-fold product of any element within a block has norm bounded away from 1, and for small enough diameter this is still true for the product over the block itself. Since the norm of the product is bounded by the product of the norms of the blocks, each less than 1, it decays exponentially as more blocks are added.

Denote the jth element in block i as A_{i_j}. For any set of blocks, obtain $\| \prod_{k=1}^{n} A_k \| \leq \prod_{i=1}^{m} \| \prod_{j=1}^{J_i} A_{i_j} \|$. By convergence of A_k in operator norm, their spectra also converge, and so for any small enough $\epsilon > 0$, $\exists K_1$ such that $\forall k > K_1$, $\sup |\Sigma(A_k)| < \sup |\Sigma(A_k)| + \epsilon < 1$. By Gohberg *et al.* (1990, Thm. IV.3.1) and uniform boundedness of the A_k, this implies that for any $\delta > 0$, for $k > K_1$, there exists some $J(\delta)$ such that $\|A_k^{J(\delta)}\| < \delta$ uniformly over k. For any block i, $\| \prod_{j=1}^{J_i} A_{i_j} - A_{i_{J_i}}^{J_i} \| \leq C^{J_i-1} \sum_{i=1}^{J_i-1} \|A_{i_j} - A_{i_{J_i}}\|$. Since A_k is a Cauchy sequence, for any $\epsilon_2 > 0$ there exists K_2 such that for all $k_1, k_2 > K_2$ $\|A_{k_1} - A_{k_2}\| < \epsilon_2$. For some $\rho < 1$ we may choose δ, ϵ_2 such that for $k > \max\{K_1(\epsilon), K_2(\delta)\}$, $\| \prod_{j=1}^{J(\delta)} A_{k+j} \| \leq C^{J(\delta)-1}(J(\delta) - 1)\epsilon_2 + \delta = \rho$. Let $m = \lfloor (n - \max\{K_1(\epsilon), K_2(\delta)\})/J(\delta) \rfloor + 1$, $J_i = J(\delta)$ for all $i \geq 2$ and $J_1 = n - (m-1)J(\delta)$, i.e., the first $\max\{K_1(\epsilon), K_2(\delta)\}$ elements, plus the remainder of n after adding the largest feasible integer number of blocks of size $J(\delta)$ after that. Then by uniform boundedness and the fact that the remainder contains no more than $J(\delta)$ blocks, $\| \prod_{j=1}^{J_1} A_{1j} \|$ is bounded by a constant C_2, and so for $n > \max\{K_1(\epsilon), K_2(\delta)\})$, $\| \prod_{k=1}^{n} A_k \| \leq C_2 \rho^{m-1}$ which decays to 0 exponentially in m, and so in n as well. $\square$

Proof. of Theorem 6. Consider the map $\mathcal{M}(g, h, \sigma)(x) = \mathbb{E}F(x, g(x), h(x) + \sigma\eta z', g(h(x) + \sigma\eta z'), \sigma)$ mapping $\mathcal{B}_1$ to $\mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$, the space of operators from $\mathcal{H}_x$ to $\mathcal{H}_2$ bounded on $\mathcal{N} \subset \mathcal{H}_x$ with bounded first and second Fréchet derivatives on the same region, where $\mathcal{B}_1$ is the Cartesian product of $\mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_y)$, the space of operators from $\mathcal{H}_x$ to $\mathcal{H}_y$ bounded and with bounded first and second derivatives on $\mathcal{N} \subset \mathcal{H}_x$, $\mathcal{W}^{1,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_x)$, the Banach space of operators from $\mathcal{H}_x$ to $\mathcal{H}_x$ bounded and with bounded derivatives on $\mathcal{N} \subset \mathcal{H}_x$, and $[-\epsilon, \epsilon] \subset \mathbb{R}$. We hope to solve $\mathcal{M}(g, h, \sigma)(x) = 0$ implicitly for g and h as a function of σ (where 0 is the operator mapping all $x \in \mathcal{H}_x$ to $0 \in \mathcal{H}_2$). To do this, we must show $\frac{\partial}{\partial(g,h)}\mathcal{M}(g^*, h^*, 0)(x)$ is

invertible, where g^*, h^* are the deterministic operators found in the previous theorem. To do this, it is sufficient to show that for every $\psi(x) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$, there exists (unique) $\phi(x) = (\phi_g(x), \phi_h(x)) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_y) \times \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_x)$ such that $\frac{\partial}{\partial(g,h)}\mathcal{M}(g^*, h^*, 0)(x)[(\phi_g(x), \phi_h(x))] = \psi(x)$. Applying the definition of $\mathcal{M}$, noting that at $\sigma = 0$ F is deterministic and so the expectation disappears, and rearranging, obtain

$$
F_y(x, g^*(x), h^*(x), g^*(h^*(x)))[\phi_g(x)] + F_{x'}(x, g^*(x), h^*(x), g^*(h^*(x)))[\phi_h(x)] +
$$
$$
= \psi(x) - F_{y'}(x, g^*(x), h^*(x), g^*(h^*(x)))\frac{\partial}{\partial x}g^*(h^*(x))[\phi_h(h^*(x))]
$$
$$
-F_{y'}(x, g^*(x), h^*(x), g^*(h^*(x)))[\phi_g(h^*(x))] \quad (F.4)
$$

To simplify notation, we write this as $G_1(x)\phi(x) = \psi(x) - G_2(x)\phi(h^*(x))$. At $x = x^*$, this reduces to $F_y[\phi_g(x^*)] + F_{x'}[\phi_h(x^*)] = \psi(x^*) - F_{y'}[\phi_g(x^*)] - F_{y'}g_X[\phi_h(x^*)]$, or $G_1(x^*)\phi(x^*) = \psi(x^*) - G_2(x^*)\phi(x^*)$. By assumption, $G_1(x^*) = [F_y, F_{x'}]$ is invertible, and so this equals $\phi(x^*) + G_1^{-1}(x^*)G_2(x^*)\phi(x^*) = G_1^{-1}(x^*)\psi(x^*)$. This has a unique solution if and only if $-1 \in \rho(G_1^{-1}(x^*)G_2(x^*))$ so $I + G_1^{-1}(x^*)G_2(x^*)$ is invertible, which holds because we assume that $\Sigma(G_1^{-1}(x^*)G_2(x^*))$ is inside the complex unit circle. Note that this is stronger than necessary for a unique solution at x^*. However, away from x^*, the system becomes no longer time reversible, and components of the spectrum outside the unit circle correspond to iterating x backward in time along $h^*(x)$. As $h^*(x)$ generally has unbounded or even nonexistent inverse, these do not generate bounded solutions for $\phi(x)$ away from x^*.

We next seek the value of $\phi(x)$ away from x^* by using continuity and solving forward. Since $G_1^{-1}(x^*)$ is assumed bounded and $G_2(x^*)$ is bounded since $F_{y'}$ and g_X are, the resolvent set of $G_1^{-1}(x^*)G_2(x^*)$ is open. By continuity of the derivatives of F and g^* with respect to x we therefore have that there is a neighborhood of x^* on which $G_1^{-1}(x)G_2(x)$ is bounded and, by continuity of the spectrum of bounded operators, has spectrum inside the unit circle. If so desired, we may restrict this neighborhood so that the spectrum is bounded away from the unit circle. Since $h^*(x)$ is stable and continuous in a neighborhood of x^*, there exists a neighborhood $\mathcal{U}_0$ contained in the above neighborhood and $\mathcal{N}$ such that $h^*(x) \in \mathcal{U}_0 \, \forall x \in \mathcal{U}_0$. As a result, for any $x \in \mathcal{U}_0$, $\phi(x) = G_1^{-1}(x)\psi(x) - G_1^{-1}(x)G_2(x)\phi(h^*(x))$, and we may iterate this forward to obtain $\phi(h^*(x)) = G_1^{-1}(h^*(x))\psi(h^*(x)) - G_1^{-1}(h^*(x))G_2(h^*(x))\phi(h^*(h^*(x)))$ and continue to iterate to find an expression for $\phi(x)$ in terms of an infinite series. Formally we have

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \gamma_k \psi(x_k)$$

where x_k and γ_k are defined recursively by $x_0 = x$, $x_{k+1} = h^*(x_k)$, $\gamma_1 = G_1^{-1}(x_0)$ $\gamma_k = -\gamma_{k-1} G_2(x_{k-1}) G_1^{-1}(x_k)$. Since $\psi \in \mathcal{W}^{1,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$, $\psi(x_k)$ is uniformly bounded by a constant on $\mathcal{U}$. By stability $\|x_k - x^*\| \to 0$, and by continuity of $G_1^{-1}(x) G_2(x)$, $G_1^{-1}(x_k) G_2(x_k) \to G_1^{-1}(x^*) G_2(x^*)$ with spectrum bounded away from the unit circle, the operator norm of γ_k must eventually decline exponentially by 9. As a result, the series converges in $\mathcal{H}_2$-norm. Further, since this boundedness is true for all x, and the uniform boundedness over x implies that the bound in9 can likewise be made uniform over x, $\sup_{x \in \mathcal{U}} \|\phi(x)\|_{\mathcal{H}_2} < \infty$, and thus $\phi(.)$ is bounded on $\mathcal{U}_0$.

To show that $\phi(.) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$, we must first show that its first derivatives are bounded on some set. To see this, first note that $\psi(x) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$ and so has uniformly bounded derivatives on $\mathcal{U}_0$. Next, note that, by assumption, the derivatives of F with respect to x, y, x' and y' themselves have uniformly bounded derivatives, and, by the previous theorem extended to apply the implicit function theorem to an operator which is twice continuously differentiable, h^* and g^* are themselves twice continuously differentiable and so have uniformly bounded derivatives on a neighborhood of x^*. As a result, $G_1^{-1}(x)$ and $G_2(x)$ have derivatives which are uniformly bounded in a neighborhood of x^*. By the stability of h^* on $\mathcal{U}_0$ and the uniform boundedness of its derivatives, writing $\frac{d}{dx} x_k(x) = \prod_{i=1}^{k} \frac{d}{dx} h^*(h^{*k-i}(x))$ by the chain rule, and noting that $h^{*k-i}(x) \to x^*$ and so by continuity $\frac{d}{dx} h^*(h^{*k-i}(x)) \to h_X$, which has spectrum inside the unit circle by assumption, Lemma 9 applies and $\|\frac{d}{dx} x_k(x)\| \to 0$ exponentially. Denote the set over which all of these properties hold as $\mathcal{U}$. Applying the product rule, obtain $\frac{d}{dx} \phi(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} ((\frac{d}{dx} \gamma_k) \psi(x_k) + \gamma_k \frac{d}{dx} \psi(x_k))$. The sum over the second term converges uniformly in x by the convergence of γ_k and the fact that $\frac{d}{dx} \psi(x)$ is uniformly bounded. By 9, products of j instances of $G_1^{-1}(x) G_2(x)$ evaluated at different points are eventually bounded by λ^j for a constant $\lambda < 1$. By the decay of the derivative of x_k to 0, and the uniform boundedness of G_1^{-1}, G_2 and their derivatives, for k larger than $\bar{k}$, $\|\frac{d}{dx}[G_1^{-1}(x_k) G_2(x_k)]\| \leq \lambda$ also. Applying the product rule to the recursive formulation of γ_k, the first term of the derivative is bounded by a constant times $\sup_{x \in \mathcal{U}} \|\psi(x)\|_{\mathcal{H}_2}$ times $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (\sum_{i=0}^{\bar{k}} \|\frac{d}{dx}[G_1^{-1}(x) G_2(x)]\|^i \lambda^{i-\bar{k}} + \sum_{i=\bar{k}+1}^{k} \lambda^i)$. The first part is bounded by a constant times a convergent geometric series, the second is bounded by a constant times $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k\lambda^i$ which is also a convergent series. As a

116

result, the series converges uniformly over $x \in \mathcal{U}$, and so $\frac{d}{dx}\phi(.)$ is bounded.

To show boundedness of second derivatives, essentially similar procedures can be followed. By the product rule, $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\phi(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}((\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\gamma_k)\psi(x_k) + \gamma_k \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\psi(x_k) + 2(\frac{d}{dx}\gamma_k)\frac{d}{dx}\psi(x_k))$. Since $\frac{d}{dx}\psi(x)$ is uniformly bounded, the summation of the last term is bounded on an appropriate neighborhood by the exact procedures used to show $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(\frac{d}{dx}\gamma_k)\psi(x_k)$ is bounded, and the second is bounded by the assumption that $\psi(x) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$ and so has uniformly bounded second derivatives. To show the first part, we must control the second derivatives of the recursive construction of γ_k. First note that for k large enough, $\|\frac{d^2}{dx^2}x_k(x)\|_{\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{U}\to\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{U}\to\mathcal{H}_x))} \to 0$ exponentially. To see this, note

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d^2}{dx^2}x_k(x)[a][b] &= \frac{d}{dx}[\prod_{i=1}^{k}\frac{d}{dx}h^*(h^{*k-i}(x))[a]][b] \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{k}\prod_{i=1}^{j-1}\frac{d}{dx}h^*(h^{*k-i}(x)) \cdot \frac{d^2}{dx^2}h^*(h^{*k-j}(x))[\prod_{i=j+1}^{k}\frac{d}{dx}h^*(h^{*k-i}(x))[a]][b]
\end{aligned}
$$

By the uniform boundedness of $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}h^*()$ in a neighborhood of x^* which applies by the implicit function theorem used to construct it extended to apply to a three times continuously differentiable operator and by the convergence of iterated first derivatives by the construction of the blocks in 9, this is bounded in operator norm by k times an exponentially decaying quantity in k, and so itself is exponentially decaying. Similarly, by three times continuous differentiability of F, the second derivatives of G_1^{-1} and G_2 are also uniformly bounded on a neighborhood of x^*, and so using the exponential convergence of $\frac{d}{dx}x_k(x)$ and $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}x_k(x)$, the product rule and the chain rule, $\|\frac{d^2}{dx^2}[G_1^{-1}(x_k)G_2(x_k)]\| \to 0$ exponentially also. So, by the product rule again, $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\gamma_k$ is the sum of k exponentially decaying components and so also declines exponentially in k in operator norm. Uniform boundedness of $\|\psi_k(.)\|$ and the continuity of the second derivative of γ_k then imply the convergence of the geometric sum $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}((\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\gamma_k)\psi(x_k)$ uniformly over x in a neighborhood of x^*. As a result, $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\phi(x)$ is bounded and so $\phi(.) \in \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$.

So, restricting all operators on $\mathcal{N}$ to $\mathcal{U}$, we see that $\frac{\partial}{\partial(g,h)}\mathcal{M}(g^*,h^*,0)(x)$ has a bounded inverse on $\mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_2)$.

Continuity of $\mathcal{M}(g,h,\sigma)(x)$ and continuity of $\frac{\partial}{\partial(g,h)}\mathcal{M}(g,h,\sigma)(x)$ with respect to g, h, and σ in a neighborhood of g^*, h^*, 0 are guaranteed by the bounded support

condition on z, continuous differentiability of $\mathbb{E}F$ with respect to its arguments and by the twice continuous differentiability of g, which holds at g^* as a corollary of the implicit function theorem used to construct it, extended to three times continuously differentiable F and locally in a neighborhood of g^* since we consider only operators in $\mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_y)$. To see the importance of the bounded support condition, note that σ enters $g(h(x) + \sigma \eta z')$ and so to ensure that $x' \in \mathcal{U}$ for all $x \in \mathcal{U}$, it is sufficient, since $h(x) \in \mathcal{U}$ and $\mathcal{U}$ is open, there exists a radius ϵ_s such that $\|\sigma \eta z'\| < \epsilon_s$, which is true if $\|z'\| < \infty$ for σ sufficiently small. As $g(x)$ and $g_x(x)$, into which x' enters in $\frac{\partial}{\partial(g,h)}\mathcal{M}(g,h,\sigma)(x)$, are guaranteed to be bounded and continuous only over a set $\mathcal{U}$, allowing z' to take unbounded support would result in the possibility of unbounded changes for small changes in σ if no further conditions were imposed on g and g_x and so could violate continuity. Combining the above conditions, the implicit function theorem in Banach space implies that there exists a neighborhood $(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ of σ around 0 in which there exist continuous, differentiable functions $g(.,\sigma)$, $h(.\sigma)$ from $(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \to$ $\mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_y) \times \mathcal{W}^{2,\infty}(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{H}_x)$ satisfying $\mathcal{M}(g(.\sigma), h(.,\sigma), \sigma)(x) = 0$. □

G   Additional Figures

The following figures display the Euclidean norm of pointwise errors over a grid in impulse responses calculated by Fourier and Wavelet basis at each time period for different numbers of basis functions K. For details, see Section 6.

References

Acemoglu, Daron, & Jensen, Martin Kaae. 2012 (June). *Robust Comparative Statics in Large Dynamic Economies*. Working Paper 18178. National Bureau of Economic Research.

Achdou, Yves, Han, Jiequn, Lasry, Jean-Michel, Lions, Pierre-Louis, & Moll, Benjamin. 2017 (aug). *Income and Wealth Distribution in Macroeconomics: A Continuous-Time Approach.*

Ahn, SeHyoun, Kaplan, Greg, Moll, Benjamin, Winberry, Thomas, & Wolf, Christian. 2017 (jun). *When Inequality Matters for Macro and Macro Matters for Inequality*. Working Paper 23494. National Bureau of Economic Research.
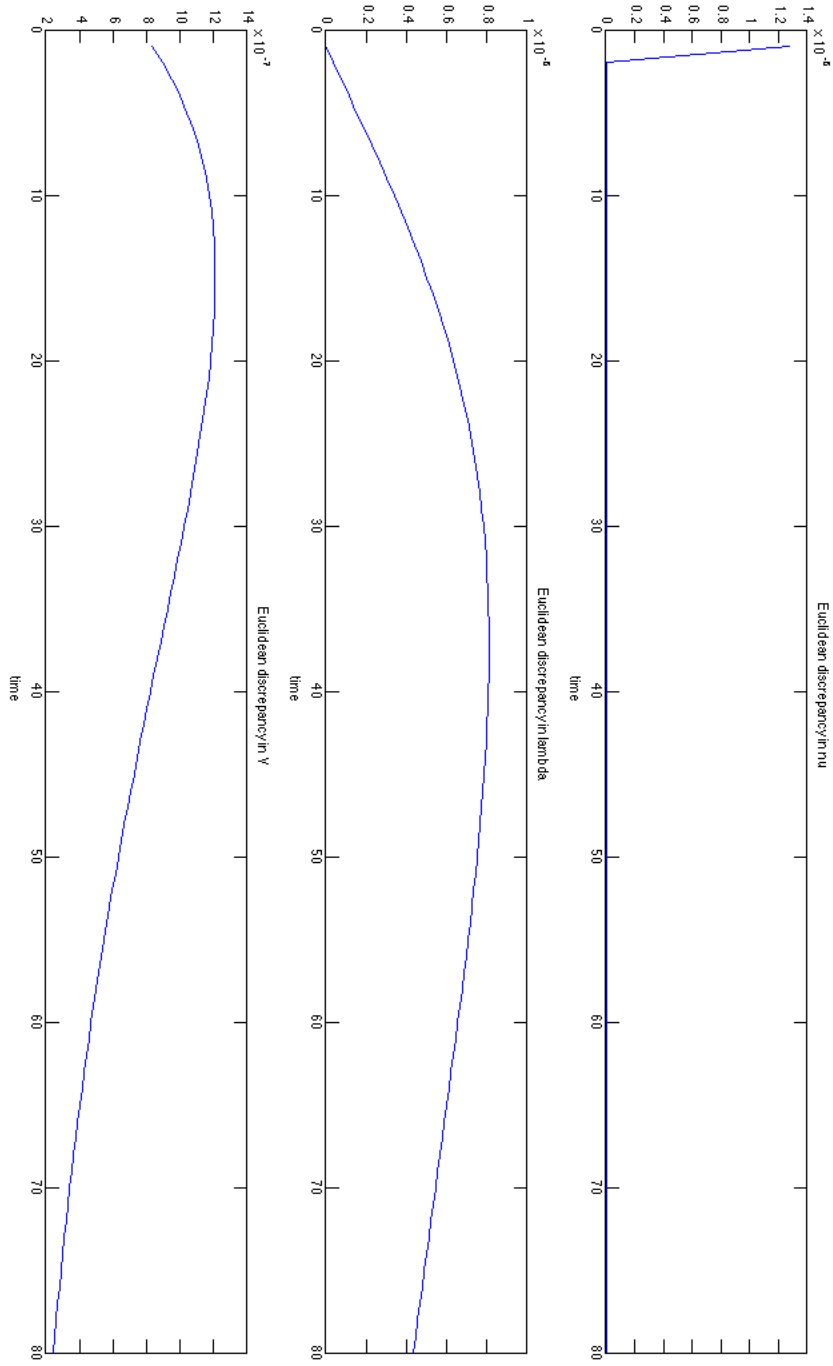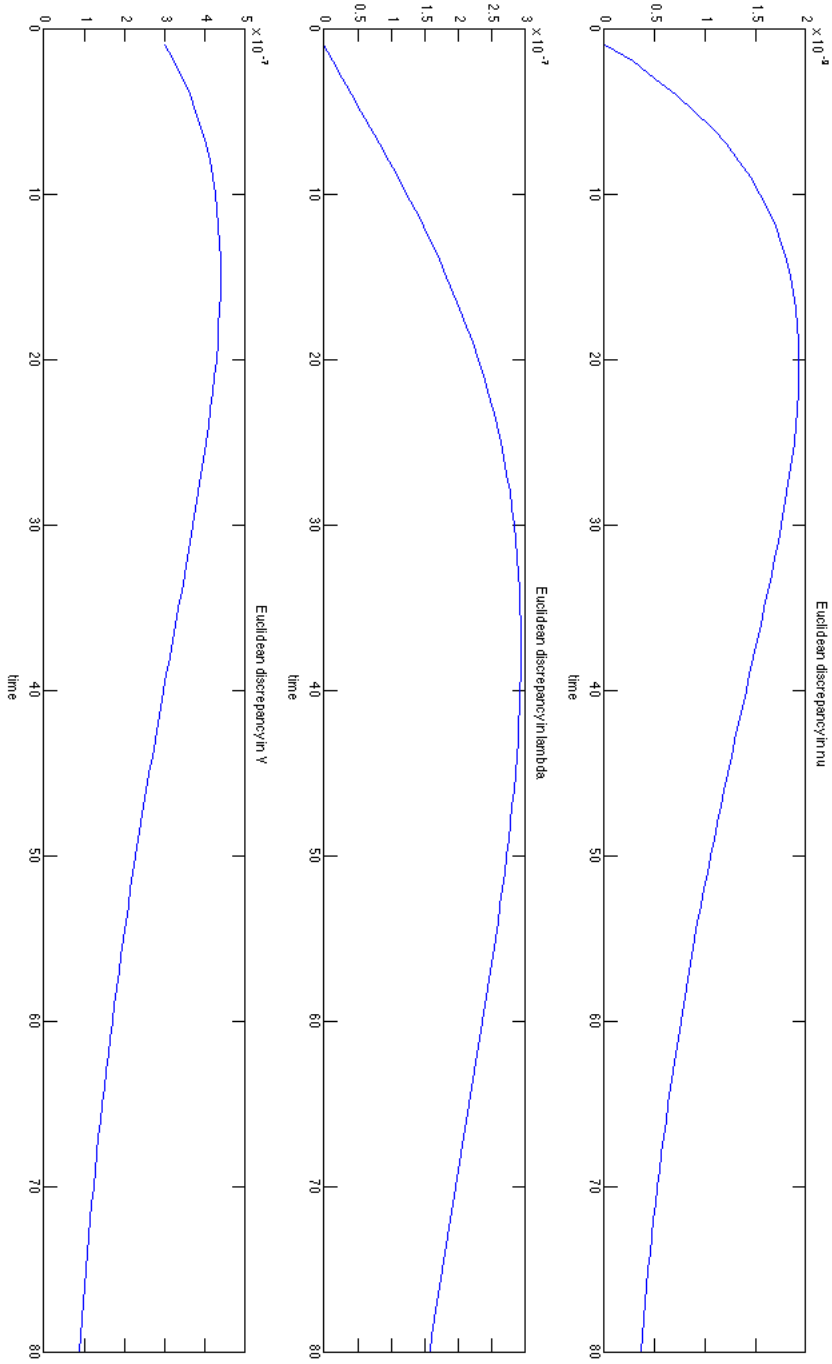
Figure G.1: Euclidean Discrepancy, K=512

Figure G.2: Euclidean Discrepancy, K=1024

Euclidean discrepancy in nu

Euclidean discrepancy in lambda

Euclidean discrepancy in V

Aiyagari, S. Rao. 1994. Uninsured Idiosyncratic Risk and Aggregate Saving. *The Quarterly Journal of Economics*, **109**(3), 659–684.

Allen, Treb, & Arkolakis, Costas. 2014. Trade and the Topography of the Spatial Economy. *Quarterly Journal of Economics*.

Andrews, Donald W. K. 2011. *Examples of Lˆ2 -Complete and Boundedly-Complete Distributions.*

Artuç, Erhan, Chaudhuri, Shubham, & McLaren, John. 2010. Trade Shocks and Labor Adjustment: A Structural Empirical Approach. *The American Economic Review*, **100**(3), 1008–1045.

Benatia, David, Carrasco, Marine, & Florens, Jean-Pierre. 2015. *Functional linear regression with functional response.*

Bergin, J., & Bernhardt, D. 1995. Anonymous sequential games: Existence and characterization of equilibria. *Economic Theory*, **5**, 461–489.

Bewley, Truman. 1986. Stationary monetary equilibrium with a continuum of independently fluctuating consumers. *In: Contributions to Mathematical Economics in Honor of Gerard Debreu.*

Beylkin, G., Coifman, Ronald R., & Rokhlin, V. 1991. *Fast Wavelet Transforms and Numerical Algorithms I.*

Bhatia, R., & Rosenthal, P. 1997. How and Why to Solve the Operator Equation AX-XB = Y. *Bulletin of the London Mathematical Society*, **29**(1), 1–21.

Blanchard, Olivier Jean, & Kahn, Charles M. 1980. The Solution of Linear Difference Models under Rational Expectations. *Econometrica*, **48**(5), pp. 1305–1311.

Boppart, Timo, Krusell, Per, & Mitman, Kurt. 2017 (dec). *Exploiting MIT Shocks in Heterogeneous-Agent Economies: The Impulse Response as a Numerical Derivative.* Working Paper 24138. National Bureau of Economic Research.

Bosq, Denis. 2000. *Linear Processes in Function Spaces: Theory and Applications.* Springer.

Boyd, John P. 2000. *Chebyshev and Fourier Spectral Methods.* 2 edn. New York: Dover.

Caliendo, Lorenzo, Dvorkin, Maximiliano, & Parro, Fernando. 2015. *Trade and Labor Market Dynamics.*

Cao, Dan. 2016 (sep). *Existence of Generalized Recursive Equilibrium in Krusell and Smith (1998).*

Carl, Bernd, & Stephani, Imtraud. 1990. *Entropy, compactness, and the approximation of operators.* Cambridge Tracts in Mathematics, no. 98. Cambridge University Press.

Chang, Yoosoon, Kim, Chang Sik, & Park, Joon Y. 2014. *Nonstationarity in Time Series of State Densities.* Tech. rept. Indiana University.

Chatelin, Françoise. 2011. Numerical Approximation Methods for Integral and Differential Operators. *Chap. 4 of: Spectral Approximation of Linear Operators.* Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics.

Chen, Xiaohong, & Christensen, Timothy M. 2015. Optimal uniform convergence rates and asymptotic normality for series estimators under weak dependence and weak conditions I. *Journal of Econometrics*, **188**(2), 447–465.

Christensen, Timothy. 2014. Nonparametric Identification of Positive Eigenfunctions. *Econometric Theory.*

Chung, Hess. 2007. *Perturbative Solutions for Heterogeneous Agent DSGE Models.* Indiana University Department of Economics.

Cochrane, John H. 2011. Understanding policy in the great recession: Some unpleasant fiscal arithmetic. *European Economic Review*, **55**(1), 2–30.

Conway, John B. 1978. *Functions of One Complex Variable.* Graduate Texts in Mathematics, no. 11. Springer.

Craven, B.D., & Nashed, M.Z. 1982. Generalized Implicit Function Theorems When the Derivative Has No Bounded Inverse. *Nonlinear Analysis, Theory, Methods, and Applications*, **6**(4), 375–387.

Deimling, Klaus. 2010. *Nonlinear Functional Analysis*. Mineola, New York: Dover.

Den Haan, Wouter J. 2010. Comparison of solutions to the incomplete markets model with aggregate uncertainty. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, **34**(1), 4–27.

Ferraty, Frédéric, & Romain, Yves. 2011. *The Oxford Handbook of Functional Data Analysis*.

Flett, T.M. 1980. *Differential analysis : differentiation, differential equations, and differential inequalities*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Gohberg, Israel, Goldberg, Seymour, & Kaashoek, Marinus A. 1990. *Classes of Linear Operators Vol. I*. Operator Theory: Advances and Applications, vol. 49. Birkhauser Verlag.

Gohberg, Israel, Goldberg, Seymour, & Kaashoek, Marinus A. 1993. *Classes of Linear Operators Vol. II*. Operator Theory: Advances and Applications, vol. 63. Birkhauser Verlag.

Golub, Gene H., & Van Loan, Charles F. 1996. *Matrix Computations*. Johns Hopkins Studies in the Mathematical Sciences. Johns Hopkins University Press.

Guillas, Serge. 2001. Rates of convergence of autocorrelation estimates for autoregressive Hilbertian processes. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, **55**(3), 281–291.

Guvenen, Fatih. 2011 (November). *Macroeconomics With Heterogeneity: A Practical Guide*. Working Paper 17622. National Bureau of Economic Research.

Guvenen, Fatih, Ozkan, Serdar, & Song, Jae. 2014. The Nature of Countercyclical Income Risk. *Journal of Political Economy*, **122**(3), 621–660.

Heathcote, Jonathan, Storesletten, Kjetil, & Violante, Giovanni L. 2009. Quantitative Macroeconomics with Heterogeneous Households. *Annual Review of Economics*.

Horváth, Lajos, & Kokoszka, Piotr. 2012. *Inference for Functional Data with Applications*. Springer Series in Statistics, no. 200. Springer.

Huggett, Mark. 1993. The risk-free rate in heterogeneous-agent incomplete-insurance economies. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, **17**(5–6), 953 – 969.

Jin, He-Hui, & Judd, Kenneth. 2002. *Perturbation methods for general dynamic stochastic models.* Tech. rept. Stanford University.

Johnstone, Iain M. 2013. *Gaussian estimation: Sequence and wavelet models.* Unpublished manuscript.

Kato, Tosio. 1976. *Perturbation Theory for Linear Operators.* 2 edn. Springer.

Kesavan, S. 2004. *Nonlinear Functional Analysis: A First Course.* New Delhi: Hindustan Book Agency.

Klein, Paul. 2000. Using the generalized Schur form to solve a multivariate linear rational expectations model. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, **24**(10), 1405 – 1423.

Krugman, Paul. 1996. *The Self-Organizing Economy.* Cambridge, MA: Blackwell Publishers.

Krusell, Per, & Smith, Anthony A. 1998. Income and Wealth Heterogeneity in the Macroeconomy. *Journal of Political Economy*, **106**(5), pp. 867–896.

Krusell, Per, & Smith, Anthony A. 2006. Quantitative Macroeconomic Models with Heterogeneous Agents. *In:* Blundell, Richard, Newey, Whitney K., & Persson, Torsten (eds), *Advances in Economics and Econometrics: Theory and Applications*, vol. I. Cambridge University Press.

Kurbatova, I. V. 2009. Banach algebras associated with linear operator pencils. *Mathematical Notes*, **86**(3-4), 361–367.

Ljungqvist, Lars, & Sargent, Thomas. 2004. *Recursive Macroeconomic Theory.* 2nd edn. MIT Press. Chap. 17 Incomplete Markets Models.

Maddison, Chris J, Tarlow, Daniel, & Minka, Tom. 2014. A* Sampling. *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 3086–3094.

Mallat, Stephane. 2008. *A wavelet tour of signal processing: the sparse way.* Third edn. Academic press.

Mertens, Thomas, & Judd, Kenneth. 2012. *Equilibrium Existence and Approximation for Incomplete Market Models with Substantial Heterogeneity.* Tech. rept. New York University.

Morris, Jeffrey S. 2014. *Functional Regression.* Tech. rept. arXiv:1406.4068v1. The University of Texas, MD Anderson Cancer Center.

Park, Joon Y, & Qian, Junhui. 2012. Functional regression of continuous state distributions. *Journal of Econometrics*, **167**(2), 397–412.

Petersen, Alexander, & Müller, Hans-Georg. 2016. Functional data analysis for density functions by transformation to a Hilbert space. *Ann. Statist.*, **44**(1), 183–218.

Pollard, David. 2002. *A User's Guide to Measure Theoretic Probability.* Cambridge University Press.

Pröhl, Elisabeth. 2017. *Approximating Equilibria with Ex-Post Heterogeneity and Aggregate Risk.*

Reiter, Michael. 2009. Solving heterogeneous-agent models by projection and perturbation. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, **33**(3), 649 – 665.

Santos, Andres. 2012. Inference in Nonparametric Instrumental Variables With Partial Identification. *Econometrica*, **80**(1), 213–275.

Schmitt-Grohe, Stephanie, & Uribe, Martin. 2004. Solving dynamic general equilibrium models using a second-order approximation to the policy function. *Journal of Economic Dynamics and Control*, **28**(4), 755 – 775.

Seo, Won-Ki. 2017. Cointegrated Density-Valued Linear Processes. 1–35.

Skorohod, A.V. 1984. *Random Linear Operators.* D. Reidel Pub. Co.

Stewart, G W. 1973. Error and Perturbation Bounds for Subspaces Associated with Certain Eigenvalue Problems. *SIAM Review*, **15**(4), 727–764.

Stewart, G.W., & Sun, Ji-guang. 1990. *Matrix Perturbation Theory.* Boston Academic Press.

Stokey, Nancy L. 2008. *The Economics of Inaction: Stochastic Control Models with Fixed Costs.* Princeton University Press.

Sweldens, Wim, & Piessens, Robert. 1994. Quadrature Formulae and Asymptotic Error Expansions for Wavelet Approximations of Smooth Functions. *SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis*, **31**(4), 1240–1264.

Veracierto, Marcelo. 2014. Adverse Selection, Risk Sharing and Business Cycles. *Federal Reserve Bank of Chicago Working Paper*.

Wei, Dong. 1998. *Coiflet Type Wavelets: Theory, Design, and Application.* Ph.D. thesis, University of Texas at Austin.

Winberry, Thomas. 2014. *Lumpy Investment, Business Cycles, and Stimulus Policy.*

Winberry, Thomas. 2016. A Toolbox for Solving and Estimating Heterogeneous Agent Macro Models.